INFORMATION SYSTEMS FOR BUSINESS (REVISED 1ST EDITION, 2021)

Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar
ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative

LibreTexts™

Information Systems for Business

Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar

ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)

This text is disseminated via the Open Education Resource (OER) LibreTexts Project (https://LibreTexts.org) and like the thousands of other texts available within this powerful platform, it is freely available for reading, printing, and "consuming."

The LibreTexts mission is to bring together students, faculty, and scholars in a collaborative effort to provide an accessible, and comprehensive platform that empowers our community to develop, curate, adapt, and adopt openly licensed resources and technologies; through these efforts we can reduce the financial burden born from traditional educational resource costs, ensuring education is more accessible for students and communities worldwide.

Most, but not all, pages in the library have licenses that may allow individuals to make changes, save, and print this book. Carefully consult the applicable license(s) before pursuing such effects. Instructors can adopt existing LibreTexts texts or Remix them to quickly build course-specific resources to meet the needs of their students. Unlike traditional textbooks, LibreTexts' web based origins allow powerful integration of advanced features and new technologies to support learning.

LibreTexts is the adaptable, user-friendly non-profit open education resource platform that educators trust for creating, customizing, and sharing accessible, interactive textbooks, adaptive homework, and ancillary materials. We collaborate with individuals and organizations to champion open education initiatives, support institutional publishing programs, drive curriculum development projects, and more.

The LibreTexts libraries are Powered by NICE CXone Expert and was supported by the Department of Education Open Textbook Pilot Project, the California Education Learning Lab, the UC Davis Office of the Provost, the UC Davis Library, the California State University Affordable Learning Solutions Program, and Merlot. This material is based upon work supported by the National Science Foundation under Grant No. 1246120, 1525057, and 1413739.

Any opinions, findings, and conclusions or recommendations expressed in this material are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the National Science Foundation nor the US Department of Education.

Have questions or comments? For information about adoptions or adaptions contact info@LibreTexts.org or visit our main website at https://LibreTexts.org.

This text was compiled on 04/23/2026

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ASCCC OERI

Licensing

About the Book

Preface

1: What is an Information System?

- 1: What Is an Information System?
  - 1.1: Introduction
  - 1.2: Identifying the Components of Information Systems
  - 1.3: The Role of Information Systems
  - 1.4: Can Information Systems Bring Competitive Advantage?
  - 1.5: Summary
  - 1.6: Study Questions
- 2: Hardware
  - 2.1: Introduction
  - 2.2: Tour of a Digital Device
  - 2.3: Sidebar- Moore's Law
  - 2.4: Removable Media
  - 2.5: Other Computing Devices
  - 2.6: Summary
  - 2.7: Study Questions
- 3: Software
  - 3.1: Introduction to Software
  - 3.2: Types of Software
  - 3.3: Cloud Computing
  - 3.4: Software Creation
  - 3.5: Summary
  - 3.6: Study Questions
- 4: Data and Databases
  - 4.1: Introduction to Data and Databases
  - 4.2: Examples of Data
  - 4.3: Structured Query Language
  - 4.4: Designing a Database
  - 4.5: Sidebar- The Difference between a Database and a Spreadsheet
  - 4.6: Big Data
  - 4.7: Data Warehouse
  - 4.8: Data Mining
  - 4.9: Database Management Systems
  - 4.10: Enterprise Databases
  - 4.11: Knowledge Management
  - 4.12: Sidebar- What is data science?
  - 4.13: Summary

- 4.14: Study Questions
- 5: Networking and Communication
  - 5.1: Introduction to Networking and Communication
  - 5.2: A Brief History of the Internet
  - 5.3: Networking Today
  - 5.4: How has the Human Network Influenced you?
  - 5.5: Providing Resources in a Network
  - 5.6: LANs, WANs, and the Internet
  - 5.7: Network Representations
  - 5.8: The Internet, Intranets, and Extranets
  - 5.9: Internet Connections
  - 5.10: The Network as a Platform Converged Networks
  - 5.11: Reliable Network
  - 5.12: The Changing Network Environment Network Trends
  - 5.13: Technology Trends in the Home
  - 5.14: Network Security
  - 5.15: Summary
  - 5.16: Study Questions
- 6: Information Systems Security
  - 6.1: Introduction
  - 6.2: The Information Security Triad- Confidentiality, Integrity, Availability (CIA)
  - 6.3: Tools for Information Security
  - 6.4: Threat Impact
  - 6.5: Fighters in the War Against Cybercrime- The Modern Security Operations Center
  - 6.6: Security vs. Availability
  - 6.7: Summary
  - 6.8: Study Questions

2: Information Systems for Strategic Advantage

- 7: Leveraging Information Technology (IT) for Competitive Advantage
  - 7.1: Introduction
  - 7.2: The Productivity Paradox
  - 7.3: Competitive Advantage
  - 7.4: Using Information Systems for Competitive Advantage
  - 7.5: Investing in IT for Competitive Advantage
  - 7.6: Summary
  - 7.7: Study Questions
- 8: Business Processes
  - 8.1: Introduction
  - 8.2: What Is a Business Process?
  - 8.3: Summary
  - 8.4: Study Questions
- 9: The People in Information System
  - 9.1: Introduction
  - 9.2: The Creators of Information Systems
  - 9.3: Information-Systems Operations and Administration
  - 9.4: Managing Information Systems
  - 9.5: Emerging Roles

- 9.6: Career Path in Information Systems
- 9.7: Information-Systems Users – Types of Users
- 9.8: Summary
- 9.9: Study Questions
- 10: Information Systems Development
  - 10.1: Introduction
  - 10.2: Systems Development Life Cycle (SDLC) Model
  - 10.3: Software Development
  - 10.4: Implementation Methodologies
  - 10.5: Summary
  - 10.6: Study Questions
  - 10.7: Summary

3: Information Systems Beyond the Organization

- 11: Information Systems Beyond the Organization
  - 11.1: Introduction
  - 11.2: The Global Firm
  - 11.3: The Digital Divide
  - 11.4: Summary
  - 11.5: Study Questions
- 12: The Ethical and Legal Implications of Information System
  - 12.1: Introduction
  - 12.2: Intellectual Property
  - 12.3: The Digital Millennium Copyright Act
  - 12.4: Summary
  - 12.5: Study Questions
- 13: Future Trends in Information Systems
  - 13.1: Introduction
  - 13.2: Collaborative
  - 13.3: Internet of Things (IoT)
  - 13.4: Future of Information Systems
  - 13.5: Study Questions

Index

Glossary

Detailed Licensing

OPEN EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INITIATIVE

ACADEMIC SENATE FOR CALIFORNIA COMMUNITY COLLEGES

An Open Educational Resource Supported by the Academic Senate for California Community Colleges Open Educational Resources Initiative

The Academic Senate for California Community Colleges Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI) was funded by the California legislature in trailer bill language during the summer of 2018. The OERI's mission is to reduce the cost of educational resources for students by expanding the availability and adoption of high quality Open Educational Resources (OER). The OERI facilitates and coordinates the curation and development of OER texts, ancillaries, and support systems. In addition, the OERI supports local OER implementation efforts through the provision of professional development, technical support, and technical resources.

The information in this resource is intended solely for use by the user who accepts full responsibility for its use. Although the author(s) and ASCCC OERI have made every effort to ensure that the information in this resource is accurate, openly licensed, and accessible at press time, the author(s) and ASCCC OERI do not assume and hereby disclaim any liability to any party for any loss, damage, or disruption caused by errors or omissions, whether such errors or omissions result from negligence, accident, or any other cause.

Please bring all such errors and changes to the attention of Academic Senate of California Community Colleges OER Initiative via e-mail (oeri@asccc.org).

Academic Senate for California Community Colleges
One Capitol Mall, Suite 230
Sacramento, CA 95814

Licensing

*A detailed breakdown of this resource's licensing can be found in **Back Matter/Detailed Licensing**.*

About the Book

An Open Educational Resource Supported by the Academic Senate for California Community Colleges Open Educational Resources Initiative

The Academic Senate for California Community Colleges Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI) was funded by the California legislature in trailer bill language during the summer of 2018. The OERI's mission is to reduce the cost of educational resources for students by expanding the availability and adoption of high quality Open Educational Resources (OER). The OERI facilitates and coordinates the curation and development of OER texts, ancillaries, and support systems. In addition, the OERI supports local OER implementation efforts through the provision of professional development, technical support, and technical resources.

The information in this resource is intended solely for use by the user who accepts full responsibility for its use. Although the author(s) and ASCCC OERI have made every effort to ensure that the information in this resource is accurate, openly licensed, and accessible at press time, the author(s) and ASCCC OERI do not assume and hereby disclaim any liability to any party for any loss, damage, or disruption caused by errors or omissions, whether such errors or omissions result from negligence, accident, or any other cause.

Please bring all such errors and changes to the resource to the attention of Academic Senate of California Community Colleges OER Initiative via e-mail (oeri@asccc.org).

Academic Senate for California Community Colleges
One Capitol mall, Suite 230
Sacramento

Book Contributors

This book is written for a general business audience and the California Community College course C-ID-BUS 140, Business Information System, Computer Information System.

Information Systems for Business and Beyond was originally developed in 2014 by David T. Bourgeois Ph.D., and is licensed under CC BY 4.0.

The book was updated in 2019 by James L. Smith Ph.D., Shouhong Wong, Ph.D., and Joseph Mortati, MBA, and is licensed under CC BY NC-SA 3.0

This Revised First Edition (2021) was edited by:

- Ly-Huong T. Pham, MBA, Ph.D. (all chapters)
- Tejal Desai-Naik (chapters 7, 8, 9, and 12)
- Laurie Hammond (chapters 2, 4, and 11)
- Wael Abdeljabbar, Ph.D. (chapters 5 and 6)
- Renee N. Albrecht is acknowledged for her early contribution to our editorial process.

This Revised First Edition is licensed CC BY - NC 4.0.

- **About the Book** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

Preface

Introduction

Welcome to Information Systems for Business. In this book, you will be introduced to the concept of information systems, their use in business, and emerging trends. You will gain insights into how firms can use information systems to sustain their competitive advantages, how it helps connect people globally, and how you may use it for your personal and professional career development.

Audience

This book is written as an introductory text, meant for those with little or no experience with computers or information systems. While sometimes the descriptions can get a little bit technical, every effort has been made to convey the information essential to understanding a topic and not getting bogged down in detailed terminology.

Chapter Outline

The text is organized around thirteen chapters divided into three major parts, as follows:

Part 1: What Is an Information System?

- Chapter 1: What Is an Information System? – This chapter provides an overview of information systems and their components, including the history of how we got where we are today.
- Chapter 2: Hardware – We discuss hardware and how it works. We will look at different types of computing devices, computer parts, learn how they interact and the effect of the commoditization of these devices.
- Chapter 3: Software – Software and hardware cannot function without each other. Without software, hardware is useless. Without hardware, the software has no hardware to run on. This chapter discusses the types of software, their purpose, and how they support different hardware devices, individuals, groups, and organizations.
- Chapter 4: Data and Databases – This chapter explores how organizations use information systems to turn data into information and knowledge to be used for competitive advantage. We will discuss how different types of data are captured and managed, different types of databases, and how individuals and organizations use them.
- Chapter 5: Networking and Communication – Today's computing and smart devices are expected to be always connected devices to support the way we learn, communicate, do business, work, and play, in any place, on any devices, and at any time. In this chapter, we review the history of networking, how the Internet works, and the use of multiple networks in organizations today.
- Chapter 6: Information Systems Security – We discuss the information security triad of confidentiality, integrity, and availability. We will review different types of threats and associated costs for individuals, organizations, and nations. We will discuss different security tools and technologies, how security operation centers can secure organizations' resources and assets, and a primer on personal information security.

Part 2: Information Systems for Strategic Advantage

- Chapter 7: Leveraging Information Technology (IT) for Competitive Advantage – This chapter examines the impact that information systems have on organizations, how they can use IT to develop and sustain competitive advantages, and improve operational effectiveness in their value chain decision-making processes. We will discuss seminal works by Brynjolfsson, Carr, and Porter related to IT and competitive advantage.
- Chapter 8: Business Processes – Business processes are the essence of what a business does, and information systems play an important role in making them work. This chapter will discuss business process management, business process reengineering, and ERP systems.
- Chapter 9: The People in Information Systems – This chapter will provide an overview of the different types of people involved in information systems. This includes people(and machines) who create information systems, those who operate and administer information systems, those who manage or support information systems, those who use information systems, and IT's job outlook.
- Chapter 10: Information Systems Development – People build information systems for people's use. This chapter will look at different methods to manage an information system's development process, with special attention to software development,

review mobile application development, and discuss end-user computing. We will look at key trade-offs that organizations face in making critical decisions to “build vs. buy or subscribe,” the balancing act between scope, cost, and time while delivering a high-quality project and obtaining the buy-in from the users.

Part 3: Information Systems beyond the Organization

- Chapter 11: Globalization and the Digital Divide – The rapid rise of the Internet has made it easier than ever to do business worldwide. This chapter will look at the impact that the Internet is having on the globalization of business. Firms will need to manage challenges and leverage opportunities due to globalization and digitalization. It will discuss the digital divide concept, what steps have been taken to date to alleviate it, and what more needs to be done.
- Chapter 12: The Ethical and Legal Implications of Information Systems – The rapid changes in all the components of information systems in the past few decades have brought a broad array of new capabilities and powers to governments, organizations, and individuals alike. This chapter will discuss the effects that these new capabilities have had and the legal and regulatory changes that have been put in place in response, and what ethical issues organizations and IT communities need to consider in using or developing emerging solutions and services that regulations are not fully developed.
- Chapter 13: Future Trends in Information Systems – This final chapter will present an overview or advance of some new or recently introduced technologies. From wearable technology, virtual reality, Internet of Things, quantum computing to artificial intelligence, this chapter will provide a look forward to what the next few years will bring to potentially transform how we learn, communicate, do business, work, and play.

For the Student

Each chapter in this text begins with a list of the relevant learning objectives and ends with a chapter summary. Following the summary is a list of study questions that highlight key topics in the chapter and suggested exercises to apply what you learn from each chapter to the current environment. To get the best learning experience, you would be wise to begin by reading the learning objectives, the summary, the questions at the end of the chapter and reflect how your personal or professional growth can be enhanced.

For the Instructor

Learning objectives can be found at the beginning of each chapter. Of course, all chapters are recommended for use in an introductory information systems course. However, for courses on a shorter calendar or courses using additional textbooks, a review of the learning objectives will help determine which chapters can be omitted.

At the end of each chapter, there is a set of study questions and exercises. The study questions can be assigned to help focus students’ reading on the learning objectives. The exercises are meant to be a more in-depth, experiential way for students to learn chapter topics and reflect how what they have learned in each chapter can help them in their chosen interest or career. It is recommended that you review any exercise before assigning it, adding any detail needed (such as length, due date, extra resources, etc.) to complete the assignments.

- **Preface** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

SECTION OVERVIEW

1: What is an Information System?

1: What Is an Information System?

1.1: Introduction
1.2: Identifying the Components of Information Systems
1.3: The Role of Information Systems
1.4: Can Information Systems Bring Competitive Advantage?
1.5: Summary
1.6: Study Questions

2: Hardware

2.1: Introduction
2.2: Tour of a Digital Device
2.3: Sidebar- Moore’s Law
2.4: Removable Media
2.5: Other Computing Devices
2.6: Summary
2.7: Study Questions

3: Software

3.1: Introduction to Software
3.2: Types of Software
3.3: Cloud Computing
3.4: Software Creation
3.5: Summary
3.6: Study Questions

4: Data and Databases

4.1: Introduction to Data and Databases
4.2: Examples of Data
4.3: Structured Query Language
4.4: Designing a Database
4.5: Sidebar- The Difference between a Database and a Spreadsheet
4.6: Big Data
4.7: Data Warehouse
4.8: Data Mining
4.9: Database Management Systems
4.10: Enterprise Databases
4.11: Knowledge Management
4.12: Sidebar- What is data science?
4.13: Summary

4.14: Study Questions

5: Networking and Communication

5.1: Introduction to Networking and Communication
5.2: A Brief History of the Internet
5.3: Networking Today
5.4: How has the Human Network Influenced you?
5.5: Providing Resources in a Network
5.6: LANs, WANs, and the Internet
5.7: Network Representations
5.8: The Internet, Intranets, and Extranets
5.9: Internet Connections
5.10: The Network as a Platform Converged Networks
5.11: Reliable Network
5.12: The Changing Network Environment Network Trends
5.13: Technology Trends in the Home
5.14: Network Security
5.15: Summary
5.16: Study Questions

6: Information Systems Security

6.1: Introduction
6.2: The Information Security Triad- Confidentiality, Integrity, Availability (CIA)
6.3: Tools for Information Security
6.4: Threat Impact
6.5: Fighters in the War Against Cybercrime- The Modern Security Operations Center
6.6: Security vs. Availability
6.7: Summary
6.8: Study Questions

This page titled 1: What is an Information System? is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

1: What Is an Information System?

Learning Objectives

Upon successful completion of this chapter, you will be able to:

- Define what an information system is by identifying its major components;
- Describe the basic history of information systems;
- Discuss the role of and the purpose of information systems; and
- Explain why IT matters

This chapter provides an overview of information systems and their components, including the history of how we got where we are today.

1.1: Introduction

1.2: Identifying the Components of Information Systems

1.3: The Role of Information Systems

1.4: Can Information Systems Bring Competitive Advantage?

1.5: Summary

1.6: Study Questions

This page titled 1: What Is an Information System? is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

1.1: Introduction

Introduction

In the course of a given day, think of activities that you do to entertain yourself, deliver a work product, purchase something, or interact with your family, friends, or co-workers. How many times do you snap a picture, post a text, or email your friends? Can you even remember the number of times you used a search engine in a day? Consider what you are using to do these activities. Most likely, many, if not all, of these activities involve using technologies such as a smartphone, a laptop, a website, or an app. These activities are also enabled by Wi-Fi networks that surround us everywhere, be it on the school's campus, workplace, the airport, or even cars. You are already a user of one or more information systems, using one or more electronic devices, different software, or apps, and connect globally through different networks. Welcome to the world of information systems!

Information systems affect our personal, career, society, and the global economy by evolving to change businesses and the way we live. To prepare yourself to participate in developing or using information, building a business, or advancing your career, you must be familiar with an information system's fundamental concepts.

Defining Information Systems

Students from diverse disciplines, including business, are often required to take a course to learn about information systems. Let's start with the term Information System (IS). What comes to your mind? Computers? Devices? Apps? Here are a few definitions from a few sources:

- " Information Systems is an academic study of systems with a specific reference to information and the complementary networks of hardware and software that people and organizations use to collect, filter, process, create and also distribute data ." (Wikipedia Information Systems, 2020)
- "Information systems are combinations of hardware, software, and telecommunications networks that people build and use to collect, create, and distribute useful data, typically in organizational settings." (Valacich et al., 2010)
- "Information systems are interrelated components working together to collect, process, store, and disseminate information to support decision making, coordination, control, analysis, and visualization in an organization." (Laudon et al., 2012)

They sound similar, yet there is something different in each as well. In fact, these authors define the terms from these perspectives:

- What are the components that make up an information system? How do they work together?
- What is the role of IS in providing value to businesses and to individuals in solving their needs?

Let's examine each perspective.

References

Information Systems. (2017, June 05). Retrieved July 28, 2020, from https://en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Information_system

Laudon, K.C. and Laudon, J. P. (2012). *Management Information Systems*, twelfth edition. Upper Saddle River, New Jersey: Prentice-Hall.

Valacich, J. and Schneider, C. (2010). *Information Systems Today – Managing in the Digital World*, fourth edition. Upper Saddle River, New Jersey: Prentice-Hall.

This page titled 1.1: Introduction is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **1.1: Introduction** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

1.2: Identifying the Components of Information Systems

Let's use your experience as users to understand the above definitions. For example, let's say you work for a small business, and your manager asks you to track the expenses of the business and send her the list so that she can see where the money has gone. You decide to use a spreadsheet on your laptop to enter the list of expenses you have collected and then email the spreadsheet to her once you are done. You will need to have a system, a laptop, a spreadsheet running and connect to email, and an internet connection. All these components must work together perfectly! In essence, you are using the interrelated components in an IS to allow it to collect, process, store, and disseminate information. The role of this IS system is to enable you to create new value (i.e., expense tracker) and for your manager to use the information you disseminate "to support decision making, coordination, control, analysis, and visualization in an organization." (Laudon et al., 2011) You and your manager have obtained your goals through the processes you have created to capture the data, calculate it, check it, and how and when your manager receives the new information you created to make her decision to manage her company.

Hence, information systems can be viewed as having six major components: hardware, software, network communications, data, people, and processes.

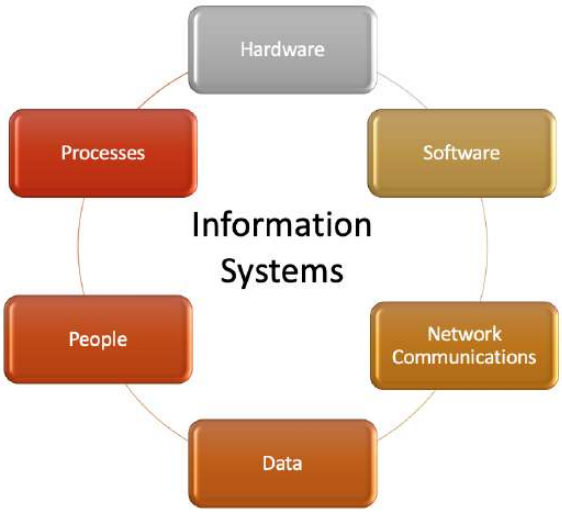


Figure 1.2.1: Components of Information Systems. Image by Ly-Huong Pham is licensed under CC BY NC

Each has a specific role, and all roles must work together to have a working information system. In this book, we group the first four components as Technology. People and Processes are the two components that deliver value to organizations in how they use the collection of technologies to meet specific organizations' goals.

Technology

Technology can be thought of as the application of scientific knowledge for practical purposes. From the invention of the wheel to the harnessing of electricity for artificial lighting, technology is a part of our lives in so many ways that we tend to take it for granted. As discussed before, the first four components of information systems – hardware, software, network communication, and data, are all technologies that must integrate well together. Each of these will get its own chapter and a much lengthier discussion, but we will take a moment to introduce them to give you a big picture of what each component is and how they work together.

Hardware

Hardware represents the physical components of an information system. Some can be seen or touched easily, while others reside inside a device that can only be seen by opening up the device's case. Keyboards, mice, pens, disk drives, iPads, printers, and flash drives are all visible examples. Computer chips, motherboards, and internal memory chips are the hardware that resides inside a computer case and not usually visible from the outside. Chapter 2 will go into more details to discuss how they function and work together. For example, users use a keyboard to enter data or use a pen to draw a picture.

Figure 1.2.2: Keyboard and iPad by Firmbee from Pixabay, Pen by athree23 from Pixabay, Printer by Steve Buissinne from Pixabay, Keyboard by Gerd Altmann from Pixabay. All images are licensed under CC BY 2.0

Software

Software is a set of instructions that tell the hardware what to do. Software is not tangible – it cannot be touched. Programmers create software programs by following a specific process to enter a list of instructions that tell the hardware what to do. There are several categories of software, with the two main categories being operating-system and application software.

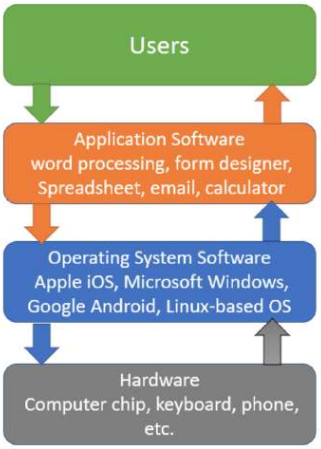


Figure 1.2.3: This image is a derivative work from David Bourgeois is licensed under CC BY 2.0. This work "Hardware, Software, Users - Interrelated" by Ly-Huong Pham is licensed under CC BY-NC

Operating system software provides an interface between the hardware and application to protect the programmers from learning about the underlying hardware's specifics. Chapter 3 will discuss Software more thoroughly. Here are a few examples:

Examples of Operating Systems and Applications by Devices

Devices	Operating Systems	Applications
Desktop	Apple macOS, Microsoft Windows	Adobe Photoshop, Microsoft Excel, Google Map
Mobile	Google Android, Apple iOS	Texting, Google Map

Data

The third component is data. You can think of data as a collection of non-disputable raw facts. For example, your first name, driver's license number, the city you live in, a picture of your pet, a clip of your voice, and your phone number are all pieces of raw data. You can see or hear your data, but by themselves, they don't give you any additional meanings beyond the data itself. For example, you can read a driver's license number of a person, you may recognize it as a driver's license number, but you know nothing else about this person. They are typically what IS would need to collect from you or other sources. However, once these raw data are aggregated, indexed, and organized together into a logical fashion using software such as a spreadsheet, or a database,

the collection of these organized data will present new information and insights that a single raw fact can't convey. The example of collecting all expenses (i.e., raw data) to create an expense tracker (new information derived) discussed earlier is also a good example. In fact, all of the definitions presented at the beginning of this chapter focused on how information systems manage data. Organizations collect all kinds of data, processed and organized them in some fashion, and use it to make decisions. These decisions can then be analyzed as to their effectiveness, and the organization can be improved. Chapter 4 will focus on data and databases and their uses in organizations.

Networking Communication

The components of hardware, software, and data have long been considered the core technology of information systems. However, networking communication is another component of an IS that some believe should be in its own category. An information system can exist without the ability to communicate. For instance, the first personal computers were stand-alone machines that did not have access to the Internet. Information Systems, however, have evolved since they were developed. For example, we used to have only desktop operating system software or hardware. However, in today's environment, the operating system software now includes mobile OS, and hardware now includes other hardware devices besides desktops. It is extremely rare for a computer device that does not connect to another device or a network. Chapter 5 will go into this topic in greater detail.

Figure **1.2.4**: Network by Gerd Altmann from Pixabay is licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0

People

People built computers for people to use. This means that there are many different categories in the development and management of information systems to help organizations to create value and improve productivity, such as:

- Users: these are the people who actually use an IS to perform a job function or task. Examples include: a student uses a spreadsheet or a word processing software program.
- Technical Developers: these are the people who actually create the technologies used to build an information system. Examples include a computer chip engineer, a software programmer, and an application programmer.
- Business Professionals: these are the CEOs, owners, managers, entrepreneurs, employees who use IS to start or expand their business to perform their job functions such as accounting, marketing, sales, human resources, support customers, among others. Examples include famous CEOs such as Jeff Bezos of Amazon, Steve Jobs of Apple, Bill Gates of Microsoft, and Marc Benioff of Salesforce.

Figure 1.2.5: Jeff Bezos, by Seattle City Council via Flicker, Steve Jobs and Bill Gates by Joi Ito via Flickr, Marc Benioff by Global Climate Action Summit 2018 via Flicker, All images are licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0

- **IT Support**: These specialized professionals are trained to keep the information systems running smoothly to support the business and keep it safe from illegal attacks. Examples include network analysts, data center support, help-desk support.

These are just some of the key people; more details will be covered in Chapters 9 and 10.

Process

The last component of information systems is *Process*. A business process is a series of steps undertaken to achieve a desired outcome or goal. Businesses have to continually innovate to either create more revenues through new products and services that fulfill customers' needs or to find cost-saving opportunities in the ways they run their companies. Simply automating activities using technology is not enough. Information systems are becoming more and more integrated with organizational processes to deliver value in revenue-generating and cost-saving activities that can give companies competitive advantages over their competitors. Specialized standards or processes such as "business process reengineering," "business process management," "enterprise resource planning," and "customer relationship management" all have to do with the continued improvement of these business procedures and the integration of technology with them to improve internal efficiencies and to gain a deeper understanding of customers' needs. Businesses hoping to gain an advantage over their competitors are highly focused on this component of information systems. We will discuss processes in Chapter 8.

Reference

Laudon, K. C., & Laudon, J. P. (2011). Management information systems. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice-Hall.

This page titled 1.2: Identifying the Components of Information Systems is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **1.2: Identifying the Components of Information Systems** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

1.3: The Role of Information Systems

Now that we have explored the different components of information systems (IS), we need to turn our attention to IS's role in an organization. From our definitions above, we see that these components collect, store, organize, and distribute data throughout the organization, which is the first half of the definition. We can now ask what do these components actually do for an organization to address the second part of the definition of an IS “to support decision making, coordination, control, analysis, and visualization in an organization” Earlier, we discussed how IS collects raw data to organize them to create new information to aid in the running of a business. To help management to make informed critical decisions, IS has to take the information further by transforming it into organizational knowledge. In fact, we could say that one of the roles of IS is to take data and turn it into information and then transform that into organizational knowledge. As technology has developed and the business world becomes more data-driven, so has IS's role, from a tool to run an organization efficiently to a strategic tool for competitive advantages. To get a full appreciation of IS's role, we will review how IS has changed over the years to create new opportunities for businesses and address evolving human needs.

The Early Years (1930s-1950s)

We may say that computer history came to public view in the 1930s when George Stibitz developed the “Model K” Adder on his kitchen table using telephone company relays and proved the viability of the concept of ‘Boolean logic,’ a fundamental concept in the design of computers. From 1939 on, we saw the evolution of special-purpose equipment to general-purpose computers by companies that are now iconic in the computing industry; Hewlett-Packard with their first product HP200A Audio Oscillator that Disney’s Fantasia used. The 1940s gave us the first computer program running a computer through the work of John von Newmann, Frederic Williams, Tom Kilburn, and Geoff Toothill. The 1950s gave us the first commercial computer, the UNIVAC 1, made by Remington Rand and delivered to the US Census Bureau; it weighed 29,000 pounds and cost more than $1,000,000 each. (Computer History Museum, n.d.)

Figure 1.3.1: Model K Adder, Image by Arnold Reinhold is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Software evolved along with the hardware evolution. Grace Hopper completed A-0, the program that allowed programmers to enter instructions to hardware with English-like words on the UNIVAC 1. With the arrival of general and commercial computers, we entered what is now referred to as the mainframe era. (Computer History Museum, n.d.)

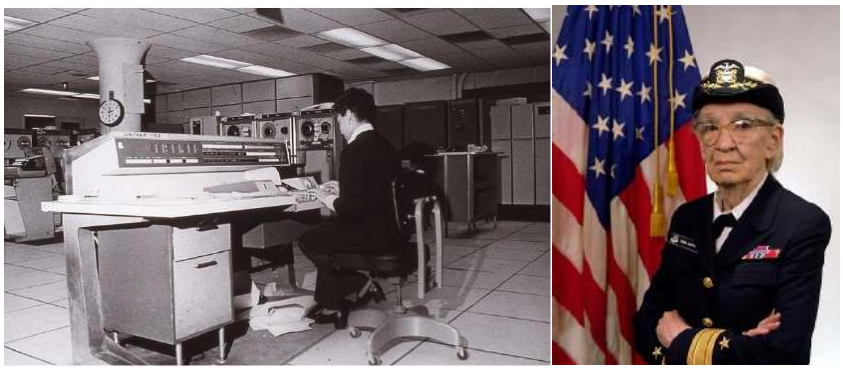


Figure 1.3.2: Univac 1, U.S. Census Bureau employees are licensed under CC-PD (right) Commodore Grace M. Hopper, Image by James S. Davis is licensed under CC-PD

The Mainframe Era

From the late 1950s through the 1960s, computers were seen to more efficiently do calculations. These first business computers were room-sized monsters, with several refrigerator-sized machines linked together. These devices' primary work was to organize and store large volumes of information that were tedious to manage by hand. More companies were founded to expand the computer hardware and software industry, such as Digital Equipment Corporation (DEC), RCA, and IBM. Only large businesses, universities, and government agencies could afford them, and they took a crew of specialized personnel and specialized facilities to install them.

IBM introduced System/360 with five models. It was hailed as a major milestone in computing history for it was targeted at business besides the existing scientific customers, and equally important, all models could run the same software (Computer History, n.d.). These models could serve up to hundreds of users at a time through the technique called time-sharing. Typical functions included scientific calculations and accounting under the broader umbrella of “data processing.”

Figure 1.3.3: Registered trademark of International Business Machines

In the late 1960s, the Manufacturing Resources Planning (MRP) systems were introduced. This software, running on a mainframe computer, gave companies the ability to manage the manufacturing process, making it more efficient. From tracking inventory to creating bills of materials to scheduling production, the MRP systems (and later the MRP II systems) gave more businesses a reason to integrate computing into their processes. IBM became the dominant mainframe company. Nicknamed “Big Blue,” the company became synonymous with business computing. Continued software improvement and the availability of cheaper hardware eventually brought mainframe computers (and their little sibling, the minicomputer) into most large businesses.

The PC Revolution

The 1970s ushered in the growth era in both making the computers smaller- microcomputers, and faster big machines- supercomputers. In 1975, the first microcomputer was announced on the cover of Popular Mechanics: the Altair 8800, invented by Ed Roberts, who coined the term “personal computer.” The Altair was sold for $297-$395, and came with 256 bytes of memory, and licensed Bill Gates and Paul Allen’s BASIC programming language. Its immediate popularity sparked entrepreneurs' imagination everywhere, and there were quickly dozens of companies making these “personal computers.” Though at first just a niche product for computer hobbyists, improvements in usability and practical software availability led to growing sales. The most prominent of these early personal computer makers was a little company known as Apple Computer, headed by Steve Jobs and Steve Wozniak, with the hugely successful “Apple II .” (Computer History Museum, n.d.)

Figure 1.3.4: Altair 8800 Computer with 8 inch floppy disk system - Image by Swtpc6800 is licensed under CC-PD. (right) Apple II Computer - Image by Rama is licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0 FR

Hardware companies such as Intel and Motorola continued to introduce faster and faster microprocessors (i.e., computer chips). Not wanting to be left out of the revolution, in 1981, IBM (teaming with a little company called Microsoft for their operating

system software) released their own version of the personal computer, called the “PC.” Businesses, which had used IBM mainframes for years to run their businesses, finally had the permission they needed to bring personal computers into their companies, and the IBM PC took off. The IBM PC was named Time magazine’s “Man of the Year” in 1982.

Because of the IBM PC’s open architecture, it was easy for other companies to copy or “clone” it. During the 1980s, many new computer companies sprang up, offering less expensive versions of the PC. This drove prices down and spurred innovation. Microsoft developed its Windows operating system and made the PC even easier to use. Common uses for the PC during this period included word processing, spreadsheets, and databases. These early PCs were not connected to any network; for the most part, they stood alone as islands of innovation within the larger organization. The price of PCs becomes more and more affordable with new companies such as Dell.

Today, we continue to see PCs' miniaturization into a new range of hardware devices such as laptops, Apple iPhone, Amazon Kindle, Google Nest, and the Apple Watch. Not only did the computers become smaller, but they also became faster and more powerful; the big computers, in turn, evolved into supercomputers, with IBM Inc. and Cray Inc. among the leading vendors.

Client-Server

By the mid-1980s, businesses began to see the need to connect their computers to collaborate and share resources. This networking architecture was referred to as “client-server” because users would log in to the local area network (LAN) from their PC (the “client”) by connecting to a powerful computer called a “server,” which would then grant them rights to different resources on the network (such as shared file areas and a printer). Software companies began developing applications that allowed multiple users to access the same data at the same time. This evolved into software applications for communicating, with the first prevalent use of electronic mail appearing at this time.

Figure 1.3.5: Registered trademark of SAP

This networking and data sharing all stayed within the confines of each business, for the most part. While there was sharing of electronic data between companies, this was a very specialized function. Computers were now seen as tools to collaborate internally within an organization. In fact, these computers' networks were becoming so powerful that they were replacing many of the functions previously performed by the larger mainframe computers at a fraction of the cost.

During this era, the first Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) systems were developed and run on the client-server architecture. An ERP system is a software application with a centralized database that can be used to run a company’s entire business. With separate modules for accounting, finance, inventory, human resources, and many more, ERP systems, with Germany’s SAP leading the way, representing state of the art in information systems integration. We will discuss ERP systems as part of the chapter on Process (Chapter 9).

The Internet, World Wide Web, and Web 1.0

Networking communication along with software technologies evolve through all periods: the modem in the 1940s, clickable link in the 1950s, the email as the “killer app’ and now iconic “@” the mobile networks in the 1970s, and the early rise of online communities through companies such as AOL in the early 1980s. First invented in 1969 as part of a US-government funded project called ARPA, the Internet was confined to use by universities, government agencies, and researchers for many years. However, the complicated way of using the Internet made it unsuitable for mainstream use in business.

One exception to this was the ability to expand electronic mail outside the confines of a single organization. While the first email messages on the Internet were sent in the early 1970s, companies who wanted to expand their LAN-based email started hooking up to the Internet in the 1980s. Companies began connecting their internal networks to the Internet to communicate between their employees and employees at other companies. With these early Internet connections, the computer truly began to evolve from a computational device to a communications device.

In 1989, Tim Berners-Lee from CERN laboratory developed an application (CERN, n.d.), a browser, to give a simpler and more intuitive graphical user interface to existing technologies such as clickable link, to make the ability to share and locate vast amounts of information easily available to the mass in addition to the researchers. This is what we called as the World Wide Web. 4 This invention became the launching point of the growth of the Internet as a way for businesses to share information about themselves and for consumers to find them easily.

As web browsers and Internet connections became the norm, companies worldwide rushed to grab domain names and create websites. Even individuals would create personal websites to post pictures to share with friends and family. For the first time, users could create content on their own and join the global economy.

In 1991, the National Science Foundation, which governed how the Internet was used, lifted restrictions on its commercial use. These policy changes ushered in new companies establishing new e-commerce industries such as eBay and Amazon.com. The fast expansion of the digital marketplace led to the dot-com boom through the late 1990s and then the dot-com bust in 2000. An important outcome of the Internet boom period was that thousands of miles of Internet connections were laid around the world during that time. The world became truly “wired” heading into the new millennium, ushering in the era of globalization, which we will discuss in Chapter 11.

Figure **1.3.6**: Registered trademark of Amazon Technologies, Inc.

The digital world also became a more dangerous place as more companies and users were connected globally. Once slowly propagated through the sharing of computer disks, computer viruses and worms could now grow with tremendous speed via the Internet and the proliferation of new hardware devices for personal or home use. Operating and application software had to evolve to defend against this threat, and a whole new industry of computer and Internet security arose as the threats kept increasing and became more sophisticated. We will study information security in Chapter 6.

Web 2.0 and e-Commerce

Perhaps, you noticed that in the Web 1.0 period, users and companies could create content but could not interact with each other directly on a website. Despite the Internet's bust, technologies continue to evolve due to increased needs from customers to personalize their experience and engage directly with businesses.

Websites become interactive; instead of just visiting a site to find out about a business and purchase its products, customers can now interact with companies directly, and most profoundly, customers can also interact with each other to share their experience without undue influence from companies or even buy things directly from each other. This new type of interactive website, where users did not have to know how to create a web page or do any programming to put information online, became known as web 2.0.

Web 2.0 is exemplified by blogging, social networking, bartering, purchasing, and post interactive comments on many websites. This new web-2.0 world, in which online interaction became expected, had a big impact on many businesses and even whole industries. Some industries, such as bookstores, found themselves relegated to niche status. Others, such as video rental chains and travel agencies, began going out of business as online technologies replaced them. This process of technology replacing an intermediary in a transaction is called disintermediation. One such successful company is Amazon which has disintermediated many intermediaries in many industries, and it is one of the leading e-commerce websites.

As the world became more connected, new questions arose. Should access to the Internet be considered a right? What is legal to copy or share on the internet? How can companies protect data (kept or given by the users) private? Are there laws that need to be updated or created to protect people’s data, including children’s data? Policymakers are still catching up with technology advances even though many laws have been updated or created. Ethical issues surrounding information systems will be covered in Chapter 12.

The Post PC and Web 2.0 World

After thirty years as the primary computing device used in most businesses, sales of the PC are now beginning to decline as tablets and smartphones are taking off. Just as the mainframe before it, the PC will continue to play a key role in business but will no longer be the primary way people interact or do business. The limited storage and processing power of these mobile devices is being offset by a move to "cloud" computing, which allows for storage, sharing, and backup of the information on a massive scale.

Users continue to push for faster and smaller computing devices. Historically, we saw that microcomputers displaced mainframes, laptops displaced (almost) desktops. We now see that smartphones and tablets are displacing laptops in many situations. Will hardware vendors hit the physical limitations due to the small size of devices? Is this the beginning of a new era of invention of new computing paradigms such as Quantum computing, a trendy topic that we will cover in more detail in Chapter 13?

Tons of content has been generated by the users in the web 2.0 world, and businesses have been monetizing this user-generated content without sharing any of their profits. How will the role of users change in this new world? Will the users want a share of this profit? Will the users finally have ownership of their own data? What new knowledge can be created from the massive user-generated and business-generated content?

Below is a chart showing the evolution of some of the advances in information systems to date.

The Eras of Business Computing

Era	Hardware	Operating System	Applications
Early years (1930s)	Model K, HP's test equipment, Calculator, UNIVAC 1	The first computer program was written to run and store on a computer.	
Mainframe (1970s)	Terminals connected to a mainframe computer, IBM System 360	Time-sharing (TSO) on MVS	Custom-written MRP software
PC (mid-1980s)	IBM PC or compatible. Sometimes connected to the mainframe computer via an expansion card. Intel microprocessor	MS-DOS	WordPerfect, Lotus 1-2-3
Client-Server (the late 80s to early 90s)	IBM PC "clone" on a Novell Network. Apple's Apple-1	Windows for Workgroups, MacOS	Microsoft Word, Microsoft Excel, email
World Wide Web (the mid-90s to early 2000s)	IBM PC "clone" connected to the company intranet.	Windows XP, macOS	Microsoft Office, Internet Explorer
Web 2.0 (mid-2000s to present)	Laptop connected to company Wi-Fi. Smartphones	Windows 7, Linux, macOS	Microsoft Office, Firefox, social media platforms, blogging, search, texting
Post-Web 2.0 (today and beyond)	Apple iPad, robots, Fitbit, watch, Kindle, Nest, cars, drones	iOS, Android, Windows 10	Mobile-friendly websites, more mobile apps eCommerce

We seem to be at a tipping point of many technological advances that have come of age. The miniaturization of devices such as cameras, sensors, faster and smaller processors, software advances in fields such as artificial intelligence, combined with the availability of massive data, have begun to bring in new types of computing devices, small and big, that can do things that were unheard in the last four decades. A robot the size of a fly is already in limited use, a driverless car is in the 'test-drive' phase in a few cities, among other new advances to meet customers' today needs and anticipate new ones for the future. "Where do we go from here?" is a question that you are now part of the conversation as you go through the rest of the chapters. We may not know

exactly what the future will look like, but we can reasonably assume that information systems will touch almost every aspect of our personal, work-life, local and global social norms. Are you prepared to be an even more sophisticated user? Are you preparing yourself to be competitive in your chosen field? Are there new norms to be embraced?

References

Timeline of Computer History: Computer History Museum. (n.d.). Retrieved July 10, 2020, from https://www.computerhistory.org/timeline/computers/

CERN. (n.d.) The Birth of the Web. Retrieved from http://public.web.cern.ch/public/en/about/web-en.html

---

This page titled 1.3: The Role of Information Systems is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **1.3: The Role of Information Systems** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

1.4: Can Information Systems Bring Competitive Advantage?

It has always been the assumption that the implementation of information systems will, in and of itself, bring a business competitive advantage, especially in the cost-saving or improve efficiency. The more investment in information systems, the more efficiencies are expected by management.

In 2003, Nicholas Carr wrote an article, “IT Doesn’t Matter,” in the Harvard Business Review (Carr, 2003) and raised the idea that information technology has become just a commodity. Instead of viewing technology as an investment that will make a company stand out, it should be seen as something like electricity: It should be managed to reduce costs, ensure that it is always running, and be as risk-free as possible.

This article was both hailed and scorned at the time. While it is true that IT should be managed to reduce cost, improve efficiencies, history has shown us that many companies have leveraged information systems to build wildly successful businesses, such as Amazon, Apple, Walmart. Chapter 7 will discuss competitive advantage in great detail.

Sidebar: Walmart Uses Information Systems to Become the World’s Leading Retailer

Walmart is the world’s largest retailer, with gross revenue of $534.6 billion and a market of $366.7B in the fiscal year that ended on January 31, 2020 (source: Yahoo finance on 7/13/2020). Walmart currently has approximately 11,500 stores and e-commerce websites in 27 countries, serving nearly 265 million customers every week worldwide (Wal-Mart, 2020). Walmart’s rise to prominence is due in no small part to its use of information systems.

Figure 1.4.1: Registered Trademark of Walmart, Inc.

One of the keys to this success was the implementation of Retail Link, a supply-chain management system. This system, unique when initially implemented in the mid-1980s, allowed Walmart’s suppliers to directly access the inventory levels and sales information of their products at any of Walmart’s more than ten thousand stores. Using Retail Link, suppliers can analyze how well their products are selling at one or more Walmart stores, with a range of reporting options. Further, Walmart requires the suppliers to use Retail Link to manage their own inventory levels. If a supplier feels that their products are selling out too quickly, they can use Retail Link to petition Walmart to raise their inventory levels. This has essentially allowed Walmart to “hire” thousands of product managers, all of whom have a vested interest in managing products. This revolutionary approach to managing inventory has allowed Walmart to continue driving prices down and responding to market forces quickly.

However, Amazon’s fast rise as the leader in eCommerce has given Walmart a new formidable competitor. Walmart continues to innovate with information technology combined with their physical stores to compete with Amazon, locking the two in a fierce battle to retain the largest retailer's title. Using its tremendous market presence, any technology that Walmart requires its suppliers to implement immediately becomes a business standard.

References

Carr, Nicholas (2003). Retrieved from https://hbr.org/2003/05/it-doesnt-matter

Wal-Mart Stores Inc. (2020). Retrieved July 13, 2020, from www.annualreports.com/Compan...art-stores-inc

Yahoo Finance - Stock Market Live, Quotes, Business & Finance News. (2020). Retrieved July 13, 2020, from https://finance.yahoo.com/

This page titled 1.4: Can Information Systems Bring Competitive Advantage? is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **1.4: Can Information Systems Bring Competitive Advantage?** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

1.5: Summary

Summary

In this chapter, you have been introduced to the concept of information systems. We have reviewed several definitions, focusing on information systems components: technology (hardware, software, data, networking communication), people, and process. We have reviewed the evolution of the technology and how the business use of information systems has evolved over the years, from the use of large mainframe computers for number crunching, through the introduction of the PC and networks for business applications, all the way to the era of mobile computing for both business and personal applications. During each of these phases, innovations in technology allowed businesses and individuals to integrate technology more deeply.

It is a foregone conclusion that almost all, if not all, companies are using information systems. Yet, history also has shown us that some companies are very successful and some are failures. By the time you complete this book, you should understand the important role of IS in helping improve efficiencies and know-how to leverage IS to develop sustained competitive advantages for every company or your own career.

This page titled 1.5: Summary is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **1.5: Summary** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

1.6: Study Questions

Study Questions

1. What are the components that make up an information system?
2. List three examples of information system hardware
3. Identify which component of information systems include Microsoft Windows
4. What is application software?
5. Describe the different roles people play in information systems
6. Describe what a process is and its purpose
7. What was invented first, the personal computer or the Internet?
8. Which comes first, the internet or the world wide web?
9. What helps make the internet usable for the masses, not just researchers?
10. What does it mean to say we are in a “post-PC and Web 2.0 world”?
11. What is Carr’s main argument about information technology? Is it true then, and is it true now?

Exercises

1. Suppose you had to explain to a member of your family or one of your closest friends the concept of an information system. How would you define it? Write a one-paragraph description in your own words that you feel would best describe an information system to your friends or family.
2. Of the six components of an information system (hardware, software, data, network communications, people, process), which do you think is the most important to a business organization's success? Write a one-paragraph answer to this question that includes an example from your personal experience to support your answer.
3. We all interact with various information systems every day: at the grocery store, at work, at school, even in our cars (at least some of us). Make a list of the different information systems you interact with every day. See if you can identify the technologies, people, and processes involved in making these systems work.
4. Do you agree that we are in a post-Web 2.0 stage in the evolution of information systems? Some people argue that we will always need the personal computer, but it will not be the primary device used to manipulate information. Others think that a whole new era of mobile, biological, or even neurological computing is coming. Do some original research and make your prediction about what business computing will look like in the next three to five years.
5. The Walmart case study introduced you to how that company used information systems to become the world’s leading retailer. Walmart has continued to innovate and is still looked to as a leader in the use of technology. Do some original research and write a one-page report detailing a new technology that Walmart has recently implemented or is pioneering to stay competitive.

This page titled 1.6: Study Questions is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **1.6: Study Questions** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

2: Hardware

Learning Objectives

Upon successful completion of this chapter, you will be able to:

- Describe information systems hardware.
- Identify the primary components of a computer and the functions they perform.
- Explain the effect of the commoditization of the personal computer.

We discuss hardware and how it works. We will look at different types of computing devices, computer parts, learn how they interact and the effect of the commoditization of these devices.

2.1: Introduction
2.2: Tour of a Digital Device
2.3: Sidebar- Moore's Law
2.4: Removable Media
2.5: Other Computing Devices
2.6: Summary
2.7: Study Questions

This page titled 2: Hardware is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

2.1: Introduction

Information systems are made up of six components: hardware, software, data, communication, people, and process. In this chapter, we will review hardware. Hardware is the tangible or physical parts of computing devices to function. We will review the components of information systems, learn how it works, and discuss some of the current trends.

As stated above, computer hardware encompasses digital devices that you can physically touch. This includes devices such as the following:

- desktop computers
- laptop computers
- mobile phones
- smartphones
- smartwatches
- tablet computers
- e-readers
- storage devices, such as flash drives
- input devices, such as keyboards, mice, and scanners
- output devices such as 3d printers and speakers

Besides these more traditional computer hardware devices, many items that were once not considered digital devices are now becoming computerized. Digital technologies are now being integrated into many everyday objects, so the days of a device being labeled categorically as computer hardware may be ending. Examples of these types of digital devices include automobiles, refrigerators, and even soft-drink dispensers. In this chapter, we will also explore digital devices, beginning with defining the term.

Digital Devices

A digital device is any equipment containing a computer or microcontroller; included in these devices are smartphones, watches, and tablets. A digital device processes electronic signals that represent either a one (“on”) or a zero (“off”). The presence of an electronic signal represents the “ on ” state; the absence of an electronic signal represents the “ off ” state. Each one or zero is referred to as a bit (a contraction of binary digit); a group of eight bits is a byte. The first personal computers could process 8 bits of data at once; modern PCs can now process 128 bits of data at a time. The larger the bit, the faster information can be processed simultaneously.

Sidebar: Understanding Binary

As you know, the system of numbering we are most familiar with is base-ten numbering. In base-ten numbering, each column in the number represents a power of ten, with the far-right column representing 10^0 (ones), the next column from the right representing 10^1 (tens), then 10^2 (hundreds), then 10^3 (thousands), etc. For example, the number 1010 in decimal represents: (1 x 1000) + (0 x 100) + (1 x 10) + (0 x 1).

Computers use the base-two numbering system, also known as binary. In this system, each column in the number represents a power of two, with the far-right column representing 2^0 (ones), the next column from the right representing 2^1 (tens), then 2^2 (fours), then 2^3 (eights), etc. For example, the number 1010 in binary represents (1 x 8) + (0 x 4) + (1 x 2) + (0 x 1). In base ten, this evaluates to 10.

As digital devices' capacities grew, new terms were developed to identify the capacities of processors, memory, and disk storage space. Prefixes were applied to the word byte to represent different orders of magnitude. Since these are digital specifications, the prefixes were originally meant to represent multiples of 1024 (which is 210) but have more recently been rounded to mean multiples of 1000.

The following table contains a listing of Binary prefixes:

Binary Prefixes and Examples

Prefix	Represents	Example
kilo	one thousand	kilobyte=one thousand bytes
mega	one million	megabyte=one million bytes
Giga	one billion	gigabyte=one billion bytes
tera	one trillion	terabyte=one trillion bytes
Peta	one quadrillion	petabyte=one quadrillion bytes
exa	one quintillion	exabyte=one quintillion bytes
Zetta	one sextillion	zettabytes=one sextillion bytes
yotta	one septillion	yottabytes=one septillion bytes

This page titled 2.1: Introduction is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **2.1: Introduction** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

2.2: Tour of a Digital Device

We will begin with the personal computers, which consist of the same basic components:

- Motherboard (circuit board)
- Central Processing Unit (CPU)
- Random Access Memory (RAM)
- Video Card
- Power Supply
- Hard Drive (HDD)
- Solid-State Drive (SSD)
- Optical Drive (DVD/CD drive)
- Card Reader (SD/SDHC, CF, etc.)

It also turns out that almost every digital device uses the same set of components, so examining the personal computer will give us insight into the structure of various digital devices. So let's take a "tour" of a personal computer and see what makes them function.

Processing Data: The CPU

As stated in the previous section, most computing devices have a similar architecture. The core of this architecture is the central processing unit or CPU. The CPU can be thought of as the "brain" of the device or main processor. Back in the day, the CPU was made up of hundreds of wires that carried information.

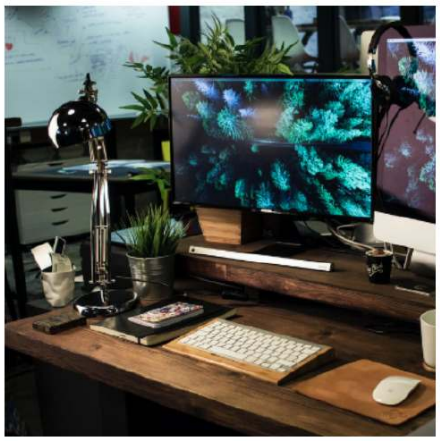


Figure 2.2.1: Personal Computer by Green Chameleon on Unsplash is licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0

These wires carried out the commands sent to it by the software and returned results to be acted upon. The earliest CPUs were large circuit boards with limited functionality. Today, a CPU is generally on one chip and can perform a large variety of functions. There are two primary manufacturers of CPUs for personal computers: Intel and Advanced Micro Devices (AMD).

The speed ("clock time") of a CPU regulates the rate of instruction and executes and synchronizes the various computer components. The faster the clock, the quicker the CPU can execute instruction per second. The clock is measured in hertz. A hertz is defined as one cycle per second. Using the binary prefixes mentioned above, we can see that a kilohertz (abbreviated kHz) is one thousand cycles per second, a megahertz (MHz) is one million cycles per second, and a gigahertz (GHz) is one billion cycles per second. The CPU's processing power increases at an amazing rate (see the sidebar about Moore's Law). Besides a faster clock time, many CPU chips now contain multiple processors per chip.

A multi-core processor is a single integrated circuit that contains multiple chips. These chips are commonly known as cores. The multi-core runs and reads instructions on the cores at the same time, increasing the speed. A computer with two processors is known as dual-core, or quad-core (four processors), increasing the processing power of a computer by providing multiple CPUs' capability.

When computers are running with multiple cores, additional heat is generated; this is why companies build in fans on top of the CPU. Macs have built-in a fail-safe that the computer will shut itself down to avoid damage when the temperature builds too rapidly. Smartphones avail themselves to hot temperatures. As our devices get smaller, we have many parts placed in a compact area, and in turn, devices will generate more heat. Running many apps on your phone simultaneously is another way to increase the phone's heat; this is why it is important to close applications after use.

Figure 2.2.2: (a) Bottom view of an Intel central processing unit Core i7 Skylake type core, model 6700K. LGA 1151 socket, 14 nm process, core frequency 4.00 GHz. Manufactured in Vietnam. Image by Eric Gaba is licensed under CC BY-SA. (b) Top view of an Intel central processing unit Core i7 Skylake type core, model 6700K. LGA 1151 socket, 14 nm process, core frequency 4.00 GHz. Manufactured in Vietnam. Image by Eric Gaba is licensed under CC BY-SA

Graphics processing unit (GPU) is an electronic circuit designed to rapidly manipulate and alter memory to accelerate the creation of images in a frame buffer for output. Devices that use GPUs are personal computers, smartphones, and game consoles. Nvidia is one of the powerhouse companies that manufacture HD graphics cards. Nvidia has been a leader in GPU's chips, one of the most popular chips is the Nvidia GeForce, which is integrated with laptops, PCs, and virtual reality processors. Nvidia has also worked with many companies expanding its GPU chip market. Some notable companies that Nvidia works with are Tesla, Quadro, and GRID.

Figure 2.2.3: NVIDIA GeForce 6800 Ultra & NVIDIA GeForce 7950 GX2. Image by Hyins is licensed under CC PD

This page titled 2.2: Tour of a Digital Device is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **2.2: Tour of a Digital Device** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

2.3: Sidebar- Moore's Law

Technology is advancing, and computers are getting faster every year. Consumers often are unsure of buying today's smartphone, tablet, or PC model because a more advanced model will be out shortly, leaving them with regret that it won't be the most advanced anymore. Gordon Moore, the co-founder of Fairchild and one of Intel's founders, recognized this phenomenon in 1965, noting that microprocessor transistor counts had been doubling every year. His insight eventually evolved into Moore's Law, which states that the number of transistors on a chip will double every two years. (Moore, 1965). This has been generalized into the concept that computing power will double every two years for the same price point. Another way of looking at this is to think that the same computing power price will be cut in half every two years. Though many have predicted its demise, Moore's Law has held for over fifty-five years. Technology is changing with innovation in design and AI support. Experts now believe,

> *"The name of the game now is the technology may not be traditional silicon transistors; now it may be quantum computing, which is a different structure and nano-biotechnology, which consists of proteins and enzymes that are organic."*

Therefore it is likely in the next five years, the emphasis of Moore's Law will change. Experts believe that Moore's law will not be able to go on indefinitely because of physical limits on shrinking the size of components on a chip continually. Currently, the billions of transistors on chips are not visible to the naked eye. It is thought that if Moore's law were to continue through 2050, engineers would have to design transistors from components that are smaller than a single atom of hydrogen.

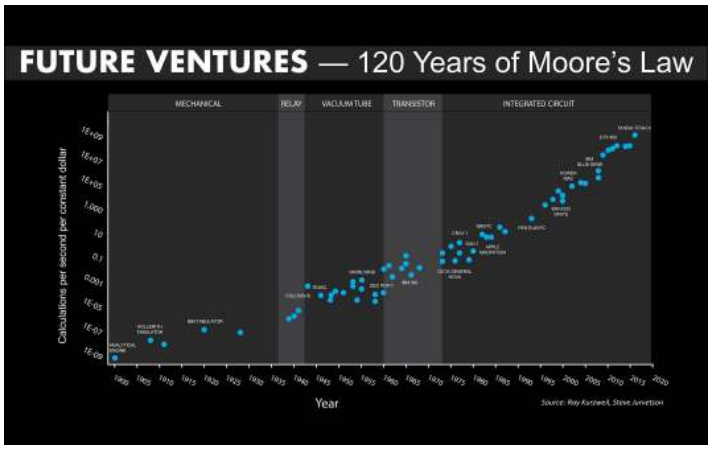


Figure **2.3.1**: Moore's Law over 120 years. Image by Jurvetsonis licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0

This figure represents Moore's law empirical relationship linked to transistors' number in a dense integrated circuit that doubles about every two years.

There will be a point, someday, where we hit the apex of processing technology as challenges occur to move forward to shrink circuits at the time of exponential growth will get more expensive. Moore's Law will then be outdated due to technology innovation. Engineers will continue to strive for new ways to increase performance (Moore, 1965).

Motherboard

The motherboard is the main circuit board hub of the computer. The hub connects the inputs and components of the computer. It also controls the power received by the hard drive and video card. The motherboard is a crucial component, housing the central processing unit (CPU), memory, and input and output connectors. The CPU, memory, and storage components, among other things, all connect to the motherboard. Motherboards come in different shapes and sizes; the prices of motherboards also vary depending on complexity. Complexity depends on how compact or expandable the computer is designed to be. Most modern motherboards have many integrated components, such as video and sound processing, requiring separate components.

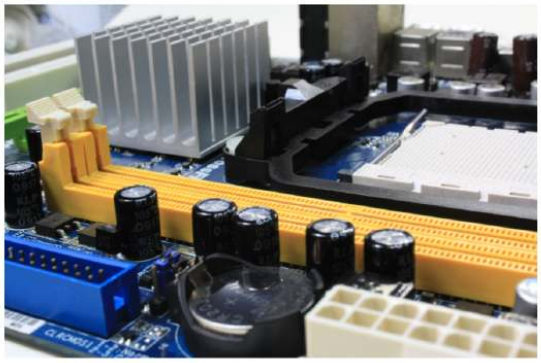


Figure 2.3.2: Computer Motherboard by MH Rhee is licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0

Random-Access Memory

When a computer starts up, it begins to load information from the hard disk into its working memory. Your computer's short-term memory is called random-access memory (RAM), which transfers data much faster than the hard disk. Any program that you are running on the computer is loaded into RAM for processing. RAM is a high-speed component that stores all the information the computer needs for current and near-future use. Accessing RAM is much quicker than retrieving it from the hard drive. For a computer to work effectively, a minimal amount of RAM must be installed. In most cases, adding more RAM will allow the computer to run faster. Increasing the RAM size, the number of times this access operation is carried out is reduced, making the computer run faster. Another characteristic of RAM is that it is volatile or temporary memory. This means that it can store data as long as it receives power; when the computer is turned off, any data stored in RAM is lost. This is why we need hard drives and SSDs that hold the information when we shut off the system.

RAM is generally installed in a personal computer by using a dual-inline memory module (DIMM). The type of DIMM accepted into a computer is dependent upon the motherboard. As described by Moore’s Law, the amount of memory and speeds of DIMMs have increased dramatically over the years.

Hard Disk and Hard Drive

While the RAM is used as working memory, the computer also needs a place to store data for the longer term. Most of today’s personal computers use a hard disk for long-term data storage. A hard disk is a magnetic material disk; a hard disk drive or HDD is the device for storing the data into a hard disk. The disk is where data is stored when the computer is turned off and retrieved from when the computer is turned on. The HDD provides lots of storage at an inexpensive cost compared to the SSD.

Solid-State Drives

SSD is a new generation device replacing hard disks. They are much faster, and they utilize flash-based memory. Semiconductor chips are used to store data, not magnetic media. An embedded processor (or brain) reads and writes data. The brain, called a controller, is an important factor in determining the read and write speed. SSD’s are decreasing in price, but they are expensive. SSD’s have no moving parts, unlike the HDD, which deals with wear and tear of spinning and break down.

Comparison of SSD vs. HDD

The checkmarks represent the best selection in the category.

Comparison of Solid State Drives and Hard Disk Drives

Attribute	SSD (Solid State Drive)	HDD (Hard Disk Drive)
Power Draw / Battery Life	✔ Less power draw, averages 2 – 3 watts, resulting in 30+ minute battery boost.	More power draw-- averages 6 – 7 watts and therefore uses more battery.
Cost	Expensive, roughly $0.20 per gigabyte (based on buying a 1TB drive).	Only around $0.03 per gigabyte, very cheap (buying a 4TB model)
Capacity	Typically not larger than 1TB for notebook size drives; 4TB max for desktops.	✔ Typically around 500GB and 2TB maximum for notebook size drives; 10TB max for desktops.
Operating System Boot-Time	✔ Around 10-13 seconds average bootup time.	Around 30-40 seconds average bootup time.
Noise	✔ There are no moving parts and, as such, no sound.	Audible clicks and spinning can be heard.
Vibration	✔ No vibration as there are no moving parts.	The spinning of the platters can sometimes result in vibration.
Heat Produced	✔ Lower power draw and no moving parts, so little heat is produced.	HDD doesn't produce much heat, but it will have a measurable amount more heat than an SSD due to moving parts and higher power draw.
Failure Rate	✔ Mean time between failure rate of 2.0 million hours.	Mean time between failure rate of 1.5 million hours.
File Copy / Write Speed	✔ Generally above 200 MB/s and up to 550 MB/s for cutting-edge drives.	The range can be anywhere from 50 – 120 MB/s.
Encryption	Full Disk Encryption (FDE) Supported on some models.	✔ Full Disk Encryption (FDE) Supported on some models.
File Opening Speed	✔ Up to 30% faster than HDD.	Slower than SSD.
Magnetism Affected?	✔ An SSD is safe from any effects of magnetism.	Magnets can erase data.

Reference

Moore, Gordon E. (1965). "Cramming more components onto integrated circuits" (PDF). *Electronics Magazine.* p. 4. Retrieved 2012-10-18.

This page titled 2.3: Sidebar- Moore's Law is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **2.3: Sidebar- Moore's Law** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

2.4: Removable Media

Removable Media

Removable storage has changed greatly over the four decades of PCs. CD-ROM drives have replaced floppy disks, and then they were replaced by USB (Universal Serial Bus) drives. USB (Universal Serial Bus) drives are now standard on all PCs with capacities approaching 512 gigabytes. Speeds have also increased from 480 Megabits in USB 2.0 to 10 Gigabits in USB 3.1. USB devices also use EEPROM technology. Since the USB is a cross-platform technology, it is supported by most operating systems. This helps connect to other devices such as printers, tv's external hard drives, and the list goes on. "There are now by one count six billion USB devices in the world." (Johnson, 2019)

Figure 2.4.1: USB Connections. Image by Bruno /Germany is licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0

Network Connection

When personal computers were first developed, they were stand-alone units, which meant that data was brought into the computer or removed from the computer via removable media, such as the floppy disk. Engineers as early as 1965 saw merit in being able to connect and share information with other computers. The term used was networking as the connections increased to multiple users, it grew to inter-networking. The abbreviated version is now called the internet. In the mid-1980s, organizations began to see the value in connecting computers together via a digital network. Because of this, personal computers needed the ability to connect to these networks. Initially, this was done by adding an expansion card to the computer that enabled the network connection. By the mid-1990s, network ports were standard on most personal computers. The configuration of these ports has evolved over the years, becoming more standardized over time. Today, almost all devices plug into a computer through the use of a USB port. This port type, first introduced in 1996, has increased in its capabilities, both in its data transfer rate and power supply.

For a personal computer to be useful, it must have channels for receiving input from the user and channels for delivering output to the user. These input and output devices connect to the computer via various connection ports, which generally are part of the motherboard and are accessible outside the computer case. In early personal computers, specific ports were designed for each type of output device. The configuration of these ports has evolved over the years, becoming more and more standardized over time. Today, almost all devices plug into a computer through the use of a USB port. This port type, first introduced in 1996, has increased in its capabilities, both in its data transfer rate and power supplied.

Bluetooth

Besides USB, some input and output devices connect to the computer via a wireless-technology standard called Bluetooth. Bluetooth was first invented in the 1990s and exchanges data over short distances using radio waves.

Figure 2.4.2: Bluetooth by Ranjith Alingal on Unsplash is licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0

Bluetooth generally has a range of 100 to 150 feet. It was not until 1999 that it reached its first general public users. Two devices communicating with Bluetooth must both have a Bluetooth communication chip installed. Bluetooth devices include pairing your phone to your car, computer keyboards, speakers, headsets, and home security, to name just a few.

Input Devices

All personal computers need components that allow the user to input data. Early computers used simply a keyboard to allow the user to enter data or select an item from a menu to run a program. With the advent of the graphical user interface, the mouse became a standard component of a computer. These two components are still the primary input devices to a personal computer, though variations of each have been introduced with varying levels of success over the years. For example, many new devices now use a touch screen as the primary way of entering data. Besides the keyboard and mouse, additional input devices are becoming more common. Scanners allow users to input documents into a computer, either as images or as text. Microphones can be used to record audio or give voice commands. Webcams and other video cameras can be used to record video or participate in a video chat session. The list continues to grow, such as joysticks used for gaming, digital cameras, and touch screens. Smartwatches are wearable compact computers on the wrist. The watch's functionality is similar to the smartphone offering mobile apps and WiFi/Bluetooth connectivity. Specialized watches for health and sports enthusiasts have also emerged, offering counts of steps taken, heart rate, and blood pressure monitoring; a popular brand is Fitbit.

Figure 2.4.3: (a) Barcode scanner by PublicDomainPictures from Pixabay is licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0 (b) Fitbit. Image by Andres Urena on Unsplash is licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0 (c) Smartphone. Image by Selwyn van Haaren on Unsplash is licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.

Output Devices

Output devices are essential as well. The most obvious output device is a display, visually representing the state of the computer. In some cases, a personal computer can support multiple displays or be connected to larger-format displays such as a projector or large-screen television. Besides displays, other output devices include speakers for audio output and printers for printed output. 3D printers have changed the way we build toys, tools, homes, and even body parts. The process of 3D printing that differentiates itself from a regular printer is called additive manufacturing.

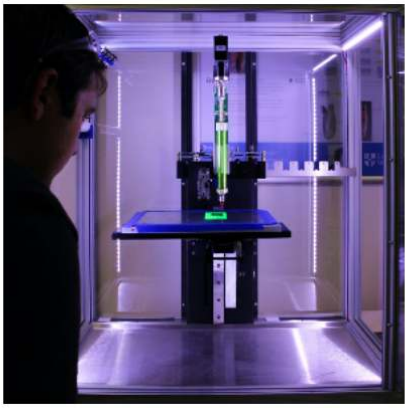


Figure 2.4.4: 3D Printer. Image by Rob Wingate on Unsplash CC BY-SA 2.0

Additive manufacturing breaks down an object and builds it layer by layer, making three-dimensional objects.

The most popular material used is plastic, but other materials can be used, such as gold and bio-material, to make human parts such as a nose or ear. The 3D printers have proven themselves in many different industries and have offered an inexpensive route for prototyping.

Sidebar: What Hardware Components Contribute to the Speed of My Computer?

A computer's speed is determined by many elements, some related to hardware and some related to software. In hardware, speed is improved by giving the electrons shorter distances to traverse to complete a circuit. Since the first CPU was created in the early 1970s, engineers have constantly worked to figure out how to shrink these circuits and put more and more circuits onto the same chip. And this work has paid off – the speed of computing devices has been continuously improving ever since.

The hardware components that contribute to a personal computer's speed are the CPU, the motherboard, RAM, and the hard disk. In most cases, these items can be replaced with newer, faster components. In the case of RAM, simply adding more RAM can also speed up the computer.

The table below shows how each of these components contributes to the speed of a computer. Besides upgrading hardware, many changes can be made to the software to enhance the computer's speed.

How Components Impact the Speed of a Computer

Component	Speed measured by	Units	Description
CPU	Clock speed	GHz	The time it takes to complete a circuit. Memory does affect computer speed. The CPU moves information from the memory while retrieving information from running applications.
Motherboard	Bus speed	MHz	How much data can move across the bus simultaneously.
RAM	Data transfer rate	MB/s	The time it takes for data to be transferred from the memory to the system.
Hard Disk	Access time	ms	The time it takes before the disk can transfer data.
Router	Data transfer rate	MBit/s	The time it takes for data to be transferred from disk to system.

Reference

Johnson, J. (2019). *The unlikely origins of USB, the port that changed everything*. FastCompany. Retrieved August 6, 2020, from https://www.fastcompany.com/3060705/an-oral-history-of-the-usb

This page titled 2.4: Removable Media is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **2.4: Removable Media** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

2.5: Other Computing Devices

A personal computer is designed to be a general-purpose device. That is, it can be used to solve many different types of problems. As the technologies of the personal computer have become more commonplace, many of the components have been integrated into other devices that previously were purely mechanical. We have also seen an evolution in what defines a computer. Ever since the invention of the personal computer, users have clamored for a way to carry them around. Here we will examine several types of devices that represent the latest trends in personal computing.

Portable Computers

In 1983, Compaq Computer Corporation developed the first commercially successful portable personal computer. By today's standards, the Compaq PC was not very portable: weighing in at 28 pounds, this computer was portable only in the most literal sense – it could be carried around. But this was no laptop; the computer was designed like a suitcase, to be lugged around and laid on its side to be used. Besides portability, the Compaq was successful because it was fully compatible with the software being run by the IBM PC, which was the standard for business.

In the years that followed, portable computing continued to improve, giving us laptop and notebook computers. The "luggable" computer has given way to a much lighter clamshell computer that weighs from 4 to 6 pounds and runs on batteries. In fact, the most recent advances in technology give us a new class of laptops that is quickly becoming the standard: these laptops are extremely light and portable and use less power than their larger counterparts. The screens are larger, and the weight of some can be less than three pounds.

The ACER SWIFT 7 is a good example of this. Its specification is:

- CPU: Intel Core i7-7Y75
- Graphics: Intel HD Graphics 615
- RAM: 8GB
- Screen: 14-inch Full HD
- Storage: 256GB SSD
- Weight: 1.179 kg (2.6 pounds)

This is simply amazing!

Finally, as more and more organizations and individuals are moving much of their computing to the Internet or cloud, laptops are being developed that use "the cloud" for all of their data and application storage. These laptops are also extremely light because they have no need for a hard disk at all! A good example of this type of laptop (sometimes called a netbook) is Samsung's Chromebook.

Smartphones

The first modern-day mobile phone was invented in 1973. Resembling a brick and weighing in at two pounds, it was priced out of reach for most consumers at nearly four thousand dollars. Since then, mobile phones have become smaller and less expensive; today, mobile phones are a modern convenience available to all levels of society. As mobile phones evolved, they became more like small walking computers. These smartphones have many of the same characteristics as a personal computer, such as an operating system and memory. The first smartphone was the IBM Simon, introduced in 1994.

Figure 2.5.1: Smartphone. Image by Syaibatul Hamdi from Pixabay is licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0

In January of 2007, Apple introduced the iPhone. Its ease of use and intuitive interface made it an immediate success and solidified the future of smartphones. Running on an operating system called iOS, the iPhone was really a small computer with a touch-screen interface. In 2008, the first Android phone was released, with similar functionality.

Consider the following data regarding mobile computing :

- There are 4.57 billion global mobile Internet users as of April 2020. (Statista, 2020)
- It is expected by 2024, approximately 187.5 million U.S. users will have made at least one purchase via a web browser or mobile app on their mobile device.(Clement, 2020)
- In 2020, U.S. mobile retail revenues were expected to amount to 339.03 billion U.S. dollars.(Clement, 2019)
- The average order value for online orders placed on Smartphones in the second quarter of 2019 is $86.47, while the average order value for orders placed on Tablets is $96.88.(Clement, 2020)
- As of 2020, there are 4.5 billion active social media users in the world; As of July 2019, there were an estimated 3.46 billion actively using their mobile devices for social media-related activities. (Clement, 2020)
- 90 percent of the time spent on mobile devices is spent on apps. (Saccomani, 2019)
- Mobile traffic is responsible for 51.9 percent of Internet traffic in the first quarter of 2020 — compared to 50.3 percent from 2017. (Clement, 2020)
- While the total percentage of mobile traffic is more than desktop, engagement on the desktop is 46.51 percent in 2020. (Petrov, 2020)
- 2020, mobile traffic is at 51.3, and desktop engagement is at 48.7 percent over the years, users are moving away from the desktop. (Broadband Search, 2020)

Tablet Computers

The tablet is larger than a smartphone and smaller than a notebook. A tablet uses a touch screen as its primary input and is small enough and light enough to be easily transported. They generally have no keyboard and are self-contained inside a rectangular case. Apple set the standard for tablet computing with the introduction of the iPad in 2010 using iOS, the operating system of the iPhone. After the success of the iPad, computer manufacturers began to develop new tablets that utilized operating systems that were designed for mobile devices, such as Android.

Global market share for tablets has changed since the early days of Apple's dominance. Today the iPad has about 58.66%, Samsung at 21.73%, and Amazon at 5.55% as of June 2020 (Statistica: E-commerce, 2020). The market popularity of the tablet has been steadily declining in recent years.

Integrated Computing and Internet of Things (IoT)

Along with advances in computers themselves, computing technology is being integrated into many everyday products such as security systems, thermostats, refrigerators, airplanes, cars, electronic appliances, lights in the household, alarm clocks, speaker systems, vending machines, and commercial environments, just to name a few. Integrated computing technology has enhanced the capabilities of these devices and adds capabilities into our everyday lives, thanks in part to IoT.

These three short videos highlight some of the latest ways computing technologies are being integrated into everyday products through the Internet of Things (IoT):

- The video is about the internet of things.: The Internet of Things [video file: 3:21 minutes] Closed Captioned
- This video is about how to update your home to a smart home.: How to start a Smart Home in 2020 [video file: 2:01 minutes] Closed Captioned
- This video takes you for a drive in Tesla's autopilot mode.: How Tesla'sAuto-pilot Mode Work [video file: 10:04 minutes] Closed Captioned

The Commoditization of the Personal Computer

Since the late 1970's the personal computer has gone from a technical marvel to part of our everyday lives; it has also become a commodity. The PC has become a commodity in the sense that there is very little differentiation between computers, and the primary factor that controls their sale is their price. Hundreds of manufacturers all over the world now create parts for personal computers. Dozens of companies buy these parts and assemble the computers. As commodities, there are essentially no differences between computers made by these different companies. Profit margins for personal computers are razor-thin, leading hardware developers to find the lowest-cost manufacturing.

Apple has differentiated itself from the pack and achieved a competitive advantage in a challenging market. The cost of their product is significantly higher, but you are buying a high-quality product and design. Apple designs both the hardware as well as their software in-house. The hardware and software design of the Mac works seamlessly with its other products such as the iPhone and iPad. The engineers at Apple are constantly updating software apps and updating hardware in order to remain a leader in the PC world.

This is an interesting article on the newest innovation for smartphones (Stuff, 2020).

Smartphone shipments are forecasted from 2010 to 2023 to grow from 304.7M units in 2010 to an estimate of 1.484 billion units in 2023 (Statista, 2019).

The Problem of Electronic Waste

Personal computers have become a common fixture in households since the early eighties. The average life span of many of these devices is between three to five years. Recycling has become a hot subject for companies who want to be viewed by consumers as Green companies. Consumers are demanding companies make a commitment to the environment. Worldwide, almost 45 million tons of electronics were tossed out in 2016. Out of that staggering amount of electronic waste, only 20% has been recycled in some shape or form. The remaining 80% made its way to a more environmentally damaging end at the landfill. Mobile phones are now available in even the remotest parts of the world and, after a few years of use, they are discarded. Where does this electronic debris end up?

Figure 2.5.2: Electronic Waste. Image by George Hotelling from Flicker is licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0

Many developing nations accept this e-waste. Abroad, these recyclers re-purpose parts and extract minerals, gold, and cobalt from these devices. These dumps have become health hazards for those living near them.

Proper safe practices are ignored, and whatever waste is not usable is dumped improperly. Consumers are trying to change this common practice by demanding companies be transparent as to how they are addressing e-waste. Though many manufacturers have made strides in using materials that can be recycled, electronic waste is a problem with which we must all deal with.

In 2006 the Green Electronics Council launched the Electronic Product Environmental Assessment Tool (EPEAT). This tool helps purchasers of electronics to evaluate the effect of products on the environment. They give a ranking of how companies are doing in gold, silver, and bronze levels. When the first began, three manufactures of PC and electronic equipment manufactures participated with 60 products. The US government in 2007 then created the U.S. Federal Acquisition Regulations (FAR), requiring federal agencies to make purchases based on EPEAT status. In 2015 EPEAT added in Imaging Equipment and Television categories. Today many large companies are using EPEAT standards such as Amazon and Apple. EPEAT systems are widely accepted, and over 43 countries are participating, and the number continues to grow.

References

Broadband Search (2020). *Mobile Vs. Desktop Internet Usage*. Retrieved September 1, 2020, from https://www.broadbandsearch.net/blog/mobile-desktop-internet-usage-statistics

Statista (2019). *Mobile share of website visits worldwide 2018*. Retrieved September 1, 2020, from https://www.statista.com/statistics/241462/global-mobile-phone-website-traffic-share

Clement, J. (2020, July 16). *U.S. mobile buyers 2020*. Retrieved September 1, 2020, from https://www.statista.com/statistics/241471/number-of-mobile-buyers-in-the-us

Coldfusion. (2015). How Tesla'sAuto-pilot Mode Works. Youtube. [video file: 10:04 minutes] Closed Captioned

Edureka! (2020). The Internet of Things. Youtube. [video file: 3:21 minutes] Closed Captioned

Petrov, C. (2020, August 11). *55+ Mobile Vs. Desktop Usage Stats You Should Know in 2020*. Retrieved September 1, 2020, from https://techjury.net/blog/mobile-vs-desktop-usage/

Six Months later reviews. (2020). How to start a Smart Home in 2020. Youtube. [video file: 2:01 minutes] Closed Captioned

Statista (2020). *Key Figures in E-Commerce*. Retrieved September 1, 2020, from https://www.statista.com/search/?q=+Key+Figures+of+E-Commerce&qKat=search

Striapunina, K. (2020, June 08). *E-commerce revenue in China 2017-2024*. Retrieved September 1, 2020, from https://www.statista.com/forecasts/246041/e-commerce-revenue-forecast-in-china

This page titled 2.5: Other Computing Devices is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **2.5: Other Computing Devices** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

2.6: Summary

Summary

Information systems hardware consists of the components of digital technology that you can touch. In this chapter, we focused on the personal computer and its components. We reviewed the personal computer configuration because it has many of the same attributes as other digital computing devices. A personal computer comprises many components, most importantly the CPU, motherboard, RAM, hard disk, removable media, and input/output devices. We also reviewed some personal computer variations, such as the tablet computer, Bluetooth, and the smartphone. By Moore's Law, these technologies have improved quickly over the years, making today's computing devices much more powerful than devices just a few years ago. Finally, we discussed two of the consequences of this evolution: the commoditization of the personal computer and the problem of electronic waste.

This page titled 2.6: Summary is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **2.6: Summary** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

2.7: Study Questions

Study Questions

1. Write your own description of what the term information systems hardware means.
2. Explain why Moore's Law may not be a valid theory in the next five years.
3. Write a summary of one of the items linked to in the "Integrated Computing" section.
4. Explain why the personal computer is now considered a commodity.
5. What is the difference between a USB and a USB portal, and what was the reason for the need?.
6. List the following in increasing order (slowest to fastest): megahertz, kilohertz, gigahertz.
7. What are the differences between HDD and SSD?
8. Why are desktops declining in popularity?.
9. What is IoT?
10. Why is Apple a leader in the computer industry?

Exercises

1. Review the sidebar on the binary number system. How would you represent the number 16 in binary? How about the number 100? Besides decimal and binary, other number bases are used in computing and programming. One of the most used bases is hexadecimal, which is base-16. In base-16, the numerals 0 through 9 are supplemented with the letters A (10) through F (15). How would you represent the decimal number 100 in hexadecimal?
2. Go to Old-Computer.com - Pick one computer from the listing and write a brief summary. Include the specifications for CPU, memory, and screen size. Now find the specifications of a computer being offered for sale today and compare. Did Moore's Law hold?
3. Under the category of IoT, pick two products and explain how IoT has changed the product. Review the price before and after the technology was introduced. Has this new technology increased popularity for the item?.
4. Go on the web and compare and contrast two smartphones on the market. Is one better than the other, and if so, why. Be sure to include the price.
5. Review the e-waste policies in your area. Do you feel they are helping or ignoring this growing crisis?
6. Now find at least two more scholarly articles on this topic. Prepare a PowerPoint of at least 10 slides that summarize the issue and recommend a possible solution based on your research.
7. As with any technology text, there have been advances in technologies since publication. What technology that has been developed recently would you add to this chapter?
8. What is the current state of solid-state drives vs. hard disks? Describe the ideal user for each. Do original research online where you can compare prices on solid-state drives and hard disks. Be sure you note the differences in price, capacity, and speed.

This page titled 2.7: Study Questions is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **2.7: Study Questions** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

3: Software

Learning Objectives

Upon successful completion of this chapter, you will be able to:

- Define the term software;
- Describe the two primary categories of software;
- Describe the role ERP software plays in an organization;
- Describe the process to write a computer program;
- Describe cloud computing and its advantages and disadvantages for use in an organization; and
- Define the term open-source and identify its primary characteristics.

Software and hardware cannot function without each other. Without software, hardware is useless. Without hardware, the software has no hardware to run on. This chapter discusses the types of software, their purpose, and how they support different hardware devices, individuals, groups, and organizations.

3.1: Introduction to Software

3.2: Types of Software

3.3: Cloud Computing

3.4: Software Creation

3.5: Summary

3.6: Study Questions

This page titled 3: Software is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

3.1: Introduction to Software

The second component of an information system is software. Software is the means to take a user's data and process it to perform its intended action. Software translates what users want to do into a set of instructions that tell the hardware what to do. A set of instructions is also called a computer program. For example, when a user presses the letter 'A" key on the keyboard when using a word processing app, it is the word processing software that tells the hardware that the user pressed the key 'A' on the keyboard and fetches the image of the letter A to display on the screen as feedback to the user that the user's data is received correctly.

Software is created through the process of programming. We will cover the creation of software in this chapter and more detail in chapter 10. In essence, hardware is the machine, and software is the intelligence that tells the hardware what to do. Without software, the hardware would not be functional.

This page titled 3.1: Introduction to Software is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **3.1: Introduction to Software** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

3.2: Types of Software

The software component can be broadly divided into two categories: system software and application software.

The system software is a collection of computer programs that provide a software platform for other software programs. It also insulates the hardware's specifics from the applications and users as much as possible by managing the hardware and the networks. It consists of

1. Operating System
2. Utilities

Application software is a computer program that delivers a specific activity for the users (i.e., create a document, draw a picture). It can be for either

1. a general-purpose (i.e., Microsoft Word, Google doc) or
2. for a particular purpose (i.e., weather forecast, CAD engineering)

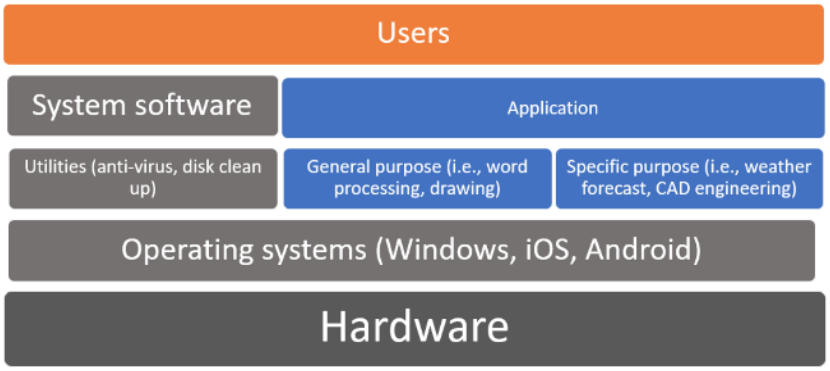


Figure **3.2.1**: Overview of software types. Image by Ly-Huong Pham is licensed under CC BY-NC

System Software

Operating Systems

The operating system provides several essential functions, including:

1. Managing the hardware resources of the computer
2. Providing the user-interface components
3. Providing a platform for software developers to write applications.

An operating system (OS) is a key component of the system software. Examples of popular operating systems are Google Android^{TM}, Microsoft Windows^{TM}, and Apple iOS^{TM}.

An OS is a set of programs that coordinate hardware components and other programs and acts as an interface with application software and networks. Some examples include getting input from a keyboard device, displaying output to a screen, storing or retrieving data from a disk drive.

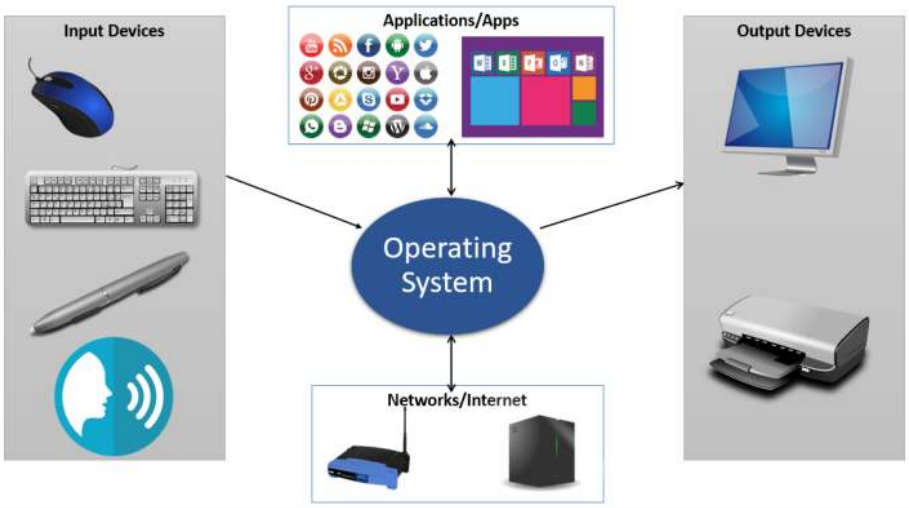


Figure **3.2.2**: Operating System Role. Image by Ly-Huong T. Pham is licensed by CC BY NC

The above picture shows the operating system at the center; it accepts input from various input devices such as a mouse, a keyboard, a digital pen, or a speech recognition, outputs to various output devices such as screen monitor or a printer; acts an intermediary between applications and apps, and access the internet via network devices such as a router or a web server.

In 1984, Apple introduced the Macintosh computer, featuring an operating system with a graphical user interface, now known as macOS. Apple has different names for its OS running on different devices such as iOS, iPadOS, watchOS, and tvOS.

In 1986, as a response to Apple, Microsoft introduced the Microsoft Windows Operating Systems, commonly known as Windows, as a new graphical user interface for their then command-based operating system, known as MS-DOS, which was developed for IBM's Disk Operating System or IBM-DOS. By the 1990s, Windows dominated the desktop personal computers market as the top OS and overtaken Apple's OS.

Figure **3.2.3**: Tux, Linux's Mascot. Image by lewing@isc.tamu.edu Larry Ewing and The GIMP is licensed under Creative Commons CC0 1.0 Universal Public Domain Dedication

A third personal-computer operating system family that is gaining in popularity is Linux. Linux is a version of the Unix operating system that runs on a personal computer. Unix is an operating system used primarily by scientists and engineers on larger minicomputers. These computers, however, are costly, and software developer Linus Torvalds wanted to find a way to make Unix run on less expensive personal computers: Linux was the result. Linux has many variations and now powers a large percentage of web servers in the world. It is also an example of open-source software, a topic we will cover later in this chapter.

In 2007, Google introduced Android to support mobile devices such as smartphones and tablets specifically. It is based on the Linux kernel, and a consortium of developers developed other open-source software. Android quickly became the top OS for mobile devices and overtook Microsoft.

Operating systems have continuously improved with more and more features to increase speed and performance to process more data at once and access more memory. Features such as multitasking, virtual memory, and voice input have become standard features of both operating systems.

All computing devices run an operating system, as shown in the below table. The most popular operating systems are Microsoft's Windows, Apple's operating system, and different Linux versions for personal computers. Smartphones and tablets run operating systems as well, such as Apple's iOS and Google's Android.

Computing devices and Operating system

Operating Systems	Desktop	Mobile
Microsoft Windows	Windows 10	Windows 10
Apple OS	Mac OS	iOS
Various versions of Linux	Ubuntu	Android (Google)

According to netmarketshare.com (2020), from August 2019 to August 2020, Windows still retains the desktop's dominant position with over 87% market share. Still, it is losing in the mobile market share, to Android with over 70% market share, followed by Apple's iOS with over 28% market share.

Sidebar: Why Is Microsoft Software So Dominant in the Business World?

As we learned in chapter 1, almost all businesses used IBM mainframe computers back in the 1960s and 1970s. These same businesses shied away from personal computers until IBM released the PC in 1981. Initially, business decisions were low-risk decisions since IBM was dominant, a safe choice. Another reason might be that once a business selects an operating system as the standard solution, it will invest in additional software, hardware, and services built for this OS. The switching cost to another OS becomes a hurdle both financially and for the workforce to be retrained.

Utility

Utility software includes software that is specific-purposed and focused on keeping the infrastructure healthy. Examples include antivirus software to scan and stop computer viruses and disk defragmentation software to optimize files' storage. Over time, some of the popular utilities were absorbed as features of an operating system.

Application or App Software

The second major category of software is application software. While system software focuses on running the computers, application software allows the end-user to accomplish some goals or purposes. Examples include word processing, photo editor, spreadsheet, or a browser. Applications software are grouped in many categories, including:

- Killer app
- Productivity
- Enterprise
- Mobile

Figure 3.2.4: *VisiCalc. Image by Gortu is licensed under Public Domain*

When a new type of digital device is invented, there are generally a small group of technology enthusiasts who will purchase it just for the joy of figuring out how it works. A “killer” application runs only on one OS platform and becomes so essential that many people will buy a device on that OS platform just to run that application. For the personal computer, the killer application was the spreadsheet. In 1979, VisiCalc, the first personal-computer spreadsheet package, was introduced. It was an immediate hit and drove sales of the Apple II. It also solidified the value of the personal computer beyond the relatively small circle of technology geeks. When the IBM PC was released, another spreadsheet program, Lotus 1-2-3, was the killer app for business users. Today, Microsoft Excel dominates as the spreadsheet program, running on all the popular operating systems.

Productivity Software

Along with the spreadsheet, several other software applications have become standard tools for the workplace. These applications, called productivity software, allow office employees to complete their daily work. Many times, these applications come packaged together, such as in Microsoft’s Office suite. Here is a list of these applications and their basic functions:

- Word processing: This class of software provides for the creation of written documents. Functions include the ability to type and edit text, format fonts and paragraphs, and add, move, and delete text throughout the document. Most modern word-processing programs also have the ability to add tables, images, voice, videos, and various layout and formatting features to the document. Word processors save their documents as electronic files in a variety of formats. The most popular word-processing package is Microsoft Word, which saves its files in the Docx format. This format can be read/written by many other word-processor packages or converted to other formats such as Adobe’s PDF.
- Spreadsheet: This class of software provides a way to do numeric calculations and analysis. The working area is divided into rows and columns, where users can enter numbers, text, or formulas. The formulas make a spreadsheet powerful, allowing the user to develop complex calculations that can change based on the numbers entered. Most spreadsheets also include the ability to create charts based on the data entered. The most popular spreadsheet package is Microsoft Excel, which saves its files in the XLSX format. Just as with word processors, many other spreadsheet packages can read and write to this file format.
- Presentation: This software class provides for the creation of slideshow presentations that can be shared, printed, or projected on a screen. Users can add text, images, audio, video, and other media elements to the slides. Microsoft’s PowerPoint remains the most popular software, saving its files in PPTX format.
- Office Suite: Microsoft popularized the idea of the office-software productivity bundle with their release of Microsoft Office. Some office suites include other types of software. For example, Microsoft Office includes Outlook, its e-mail package, and OneNote, an information-gathering collaboration tool. The professional version of Office also includes Microsoft Access, a database package. (Databases are covered more in chapter 4.) This package continues to dominate the market, and most businesses expect employees to know how to use this software. However, many competitors to Microsoft Office exist and are compatible with Microsoft's file formats (see table below). Microsoft now has a cloud-based version called Microsoft Office

365. Similar to Google Drive, this suite allows users to edit and share documents online utilizing cloud-computing technology. Cloud computing will be discussed later in this chapter.

Category: / Suite:	Word Processing	Spreadsheet	Presentation	Other
Microsoft Office	Word	Excel	PowerPoint	Outlook (email), Access (database), OneNote (information gathering)
Apple iWork	Pages	Numbers	Keynote	Integrates with iTunes, iCloud, and other Apple software
OpenOffice	Writer	Calc	Impress	Base (database), Draw (drawing), Math (equations)
Google Drive	Document	Spreadsheet	Presentation	Gmail (email), Forms (online form data collection), Draw (drawing)

Figure 3.2.5: Comparison of office application software suites. Image by David Bourgeois, Ph.D. is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Sidebar: "PowerPointed" to Death

As presentation software, specifically Microsoft PowerPoint, has gained acceptance as the primary method to formally present information in a business setting, the art of giving an engaging presentation is becoming rare. Many presenters now just read the bullet points in the presentation and immediately bore those in attendance who can already read it for themselves.

The real problem is not with PowerPoint as much as it is with the person creating and presenting. The book Presentation Zen by Garr Reynolds is highly recommended to anyone who wants to improve their presentation skills.

New opportunities have been presented to make presentation software more effective. One such example is Prezi. Prezi is a presentation tool that uses a single canvas for the presentation, allowing presenters to place text, images, and other media on the canvas and then navigate between these objects as they present.

Enterprise Software

As the personal computer proliferated inside organizations, control over the information generated by the organization began splintering. For example, the customer service department creates a customer database to track calls and problem reports. The sales department also creates a database to keep track of customer information. Which one should be used as the master list of customers? As another example, someone in sales might create a spreadsheet to calculate sales revenue, while someone in finance creates a different one that meets their department's needs. However, the two spreadsheets will likely come up with different totals for revenue. Which one is correct? And who is managing all this information? This type of example presents challenges to management to make effective decisions.

Enterprise Resource Planning

In the 1990s, the need to bring the organization's information back under centralized control became more apparent. The enterprise resource planning (ERP) system (sometimes just called enterprise software) was developed to bring together an entire organization in one software application. Key characteristics of an ERP include:

- An integrated set of modules: Each module serves different functions in an organization, such as Marketing, Sales, Manufacturing.
- A consistent user interface: An ERP is a software application that provides a common interface across all modules of the ERP and is used by an organization's employees to access information
- A common database: All users of the ERP edit and save their information from the data source. This means that there is only one customer database, there is only one calculation for revenue, etc.
- Integrated business processes: All users must follow the same business rules and process throughout the entire organization": ERP systems include functionality that covers all of the essential components of a business, such as how organizations track cash, invoices, purchases, payroll, product development, supply chain.

Figure 3.2.6: ERP Modules. Image by Shing Hin Yeung is licensed under CC-BY-SA

ERP systems were originally marketed to large corporations, given that they are costly. However, as more and more large companies began installing them, ERP vendors began targeting mid-sized and even smaller businesses. Some of the more well-known ERP systems include those from SAP, Oracle, and Microsoft.

To effectively implement an ERP system in an organization, the organization must be ready to make a full commitment, including the cost to train employees as part of the implementation.

All aspects of the organization are affected as old systems are replaced by the ERP system. In general, implementing an ERP system can take two to three years and several million dollars.

So why implement an ERP system? If done properly, an ERP system can bring an organization a good return on its investment. By consolidating information systems across the enterprise and using the software to enforce best practices, most organizations see an overall improvement after implementing an ERP. Business processes as a form of competitive advantage will be covered in chapter 9.

Customer Relationship Management

A customer relationship management (CRM) system is a software application designed to manage customer interactions, including customer service, marketing, and sales. It collects all data about the customers. The objectives of a CRM are:

- Personalize customer relationship to increase customer loyalty
- Improve communication
- Anticipate needs to retain existing or acquire new customers

Some ERP software systems include CRM modules. An example of a well-known CRM package in Salesforce

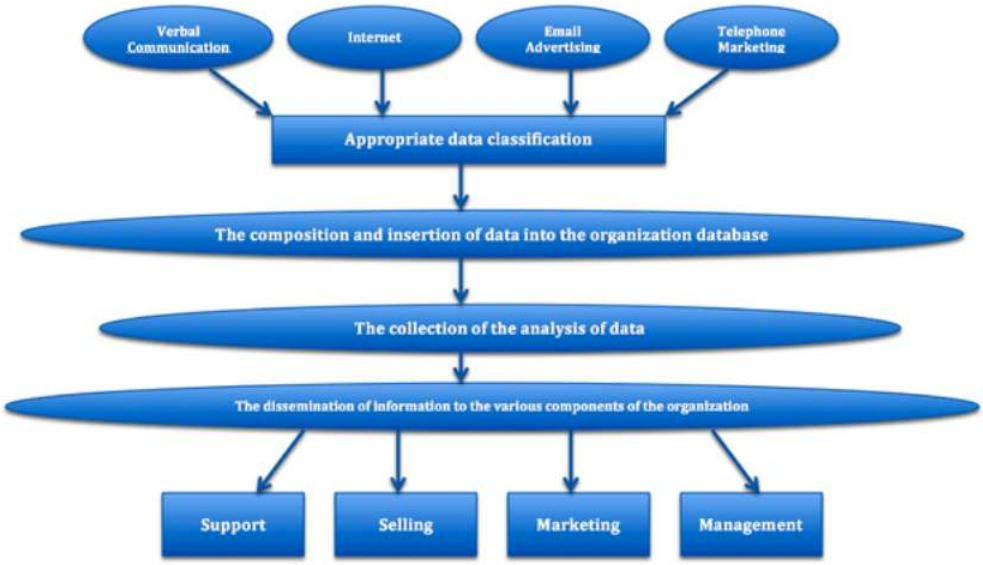


Figure **3.2.7**: Components in the different types of CRM. Image by Bgrigorov is licensed under CC-BY-SA

Supply Chain Management

Many organizations must deal with the complex task of managing their supply chains. At its simplest, a supply chain is a linkage between an organization's suppliers, its manufacturing facilities, and its products' distributors. Each link in the chain has a multiplying effect on the complexity of the process. For example, if there are two suppliers, one manufacturing facility, and two distributors, then there are 2 x 1 x 2 = 4 links to handle. However, if you add two more suppliers, another manufacturing facility, and two more distributors, then you have 4 x 2 x 4 = 32 links to manage.

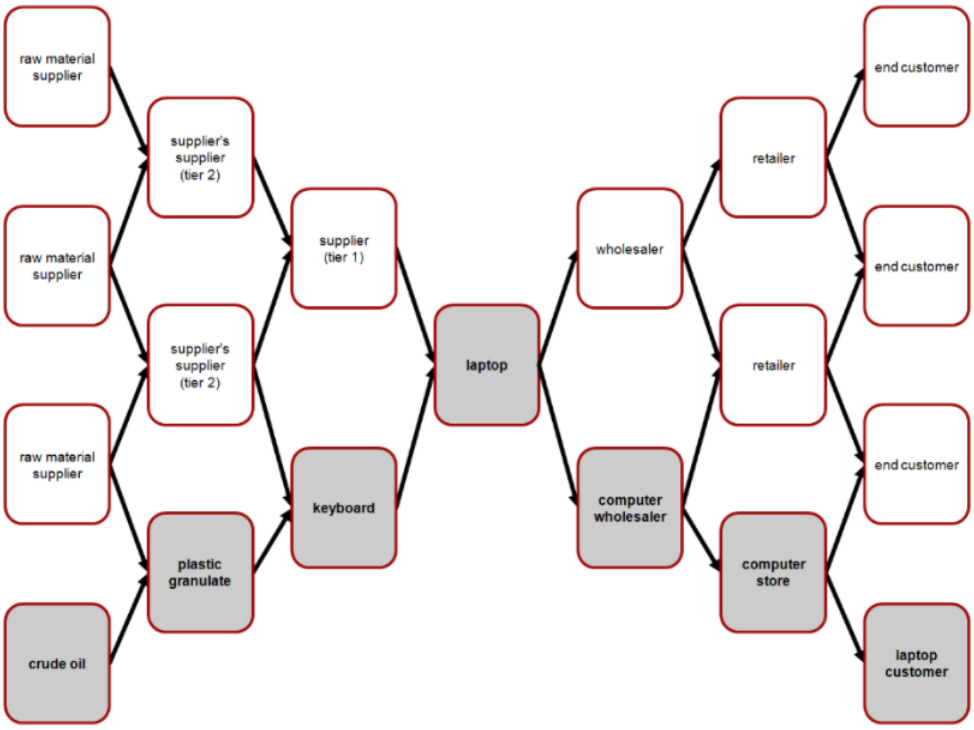


Figure **3.2.8**: A supply and demand network. Image by Andreas Wieland is licensed under CC-BY-SA 3.0

A supply chain management (SCM) system manages the interconnection between these links and the products' inventory in their various development stages. The Association provides a full definition of a supply chain management system for Operations Management: “The design, planning, execution, control, and monitoring of supply chain activities to create net value, building a competitive infrastructure, leveraging worldwide logistics, synchronizing supply with demand, and measuring performance globally.” 2 Most ERP systems include a supply chain management module.

Mobile Software

A mobile application, commonly called a mobile app, is a software application programmed to run specifically on a mobile device such as smartphones and tablets.

As we saw in chapter 2, smartphones and tablets are becoming a dominant form of computing, with many more smartphones being sold than personal computers. This means that organizations will have to get smart about developing software on mobile devices to stay relevant. With the rise of mobile devices' adoption, the number of apps is exploding in the millions (Forbes.com, 2020), and there is an app for just about anything a user is looking to do. Examples include apps as a flashlight, a step counter, a plant identifier, and games.

We will discuss the question of building a mobile app in Chapter 10.

References

There Are Now 8.9 Million Mobile Apps, And China Is 40% Of Mobile App Spending (2020, Feb 28). Retrieved September 4, 2020, from https://www.forbes.com/

This page titled 3.2: Types of Software is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **3.2: Types of Software** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

3.3: Cloud Computing

Historically, for software to run on a computer, an individual copy of the software had to be installed on the computer, either from a disk or, more recently, after being downloaded from the Internet. The concept of "cloud" computing changes this model.

"The cloud" refers to applications, services, and data stored in data centers, server farms, and storage servers and accessed by users via the Internet. In most cases, the users don't know where their data is actually stored. Individuals and organizations use cloud computing.

You probably already use cloud computing in some forms. For example, if you access your email via your web browser, you are using a form of cloud computing. If you use Google Drive's applications, you are using cloud computing. Simultaneously, these are free versions of cloud computing, big business in providing applications and data storage over the web. Commercial and large applications can also exist on the cloud, such as the entire suite of CRM from Salesforce is offered via the cloud. Cloud computing is not limited to web applications: it can also be used for phone or video streaming services.

Advantages of Cloud Computing

- No software to install or upgrades to maintain.
- Available from any computer that has access to the Internet.
- Can scale to a large number of users easily.
- New applications can be up and running very quickly.
- Services can be leased for a limited time on an as-needed basis.
- Your information is not lost if your hard disk crashes or your laptop is stolen.
- You are not limited by the available memory or disk space on your computer.

Disadvantages of Cloud Computing

- Your information is stored on someone else's computer
- You must have Internet access to use it. If you do not have access, you're out of luck.
- You are relying on a third party to provide these services.
- You don't know how your data is protected from theft or sold by your own cloud service provider.

Cloud computing can greatly impact how organizations manage technology. For example, why is an IT department needed to purchase, configure, and manage personal computers and software when all that is really needed is an Internet connection?

Using a Private Cloud

Many organizations are understandably nervous about giving up control of their data and applications using cloud computing. But they also see the value in reducing the need for installing software and adding disk storage to local computers. A solution to this problem lies in the concept of a private cloud. While there are various private cloud models, the basic idea is for the cloud service provider to rent a specific portion of their server space exclusive to a specific organization. The organization has full control over that server space while still gaining some of the benefits of cloud computing.

Virtualization

One technology that is utilized extensively as part of cloud computing is "virtualization." Virtualization is using software to create a virtual machine that simulates a computer with an operating system. For example, using virtualization, a single computer that runs Microsoft Windows can host a virtual machine that looks like a computer with a specific Linux-based OS. This ability maximizes the use of available resources on a single machine. Companies such as EMC provide virtualization software that allows cloud service providers to provision web servers to their clients quickly and efficiently. Organizations are also implementing virtualization to reduce the number of servers needed to provide the necessary services. For more detail on how virtualization works, see this informational page from VMWare.

This page titled 3.3: Cloud Computing is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **3.3: Cloud Computing** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

3.4: Software Creation

We just discussed different types of software and now can ask: How is software created? If the software is the set of instructions that tells the hardware what to do, how are these instructions written? If a computer reads everything as one and zero, do we have to learn how to write software that way? Thankfully, another software type is written, especially for software developers to write system software and applications - called programming languages. The people who can program are called computer programmers or software developers.

Analogous to a human language, a programming language consists of keywords, comments, symbols, and grammatical rules to construct statements as valid instructions understandable by the computer to perform certain tasks. Using this language, a programmer writes a program (called the source code). Another software then processes the source code to convert the programming statements to a machine-readable form, the ones, and zeroes necessary to execute the CPU. This conversion process is often known as compiling, and the software is called the compiler. Most of the time, programming is done inside a programming environment; when you purchase a copy of Visual Studio from Microsoft; It provides the developers with an editor to write the source code, a compiler, and help for many of Microsoft's programming languages. Examples of well-known programming languages today include Java, PHP, and C's various flavors (Visual C, C++, C#.)

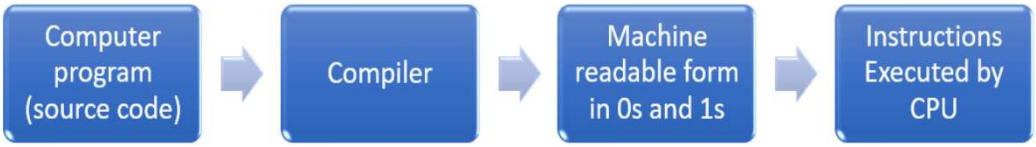


Figure 3.4.1: Convert a computer program to an executable. Image by Ly-Huong T. Pham is licensed under CC-BY-NC

Thousands of programming languages have been created since the first programming language in 1883 by a woman named Ada Lovelace. One of the earlier English-like languages called COBOL has been in use since the 1950s to the present time in services that we still use today, such as payroll, reservation systems. The C programming language was introduced in the 1970s and remained a top popular choice. Some new languages such as C#, Swift are gaining momentum as well. Programmers select the best-matched language with the problem to be solved for a particular OS platform. For example, languages such as HTML and JavaScript are used to develop web pages.

It is hard to determine which language is the most popular since it varies. However, according to TIOBE Index, one of the companies that rank the popularity of the programming languages monthly, the top five in August 2020 are C, Java, Python, C++, and C# (2020). For more information on this methodology, please visit the TIOBE definition page. For those who wish to learn more about programming, Python is a good first language to learn because not only is it a modern language for web development, it is simple to learn and covers many fundamental concepts of programming that apply to other languages.

One person can write some programs. However, most software programs are written by many developers. For example, it takes hundreds of software engineers to write Microsoft Windows or Excel. To ensure teams can deliver timely and quality software with the least amount of errors, also known as bugs, formal project management methodologies are used, a topic that we will discuss in chapter 10.

Open-Source vs. Closed-Source Software

When the personal computer was first released, computer enthusiasts immediately banded together to build applications and solve problems. These computer enthusiasts were happy to share any programs they built and solutions to problems they found; this collaboration enabled them to innovate more quickly and fix problems.

As software began to become a business, however, this idea of sharing everything fell out of favor for some. When a software program takes hundreds of hours to develop, it is understandable that the programmers do not want to give it away. This led to a new business model of restrictive software licensing, which required payment for software to the owner, a model that is still dominant today. This model is sometimes referred to as closed source, as the source code remains private property and is not made available to others. Microsoft Windows, Excel, Apple iOS are examples of closed source software.

There are many, however, who feel that software should not be restricted. Like those early hobbyists in the 1970s, they feel that innovation and progress can be made much more rapidly if we share what we learn. In the 1990s, with Internet access connecting more and more people, the open-source movement gained steam.

Open-source software is software that has the source code available for anyone to copy and use. For non-programmers, it won't be of much use unless the compiled format is also made available for users to use. However, for programmers, the open-source movement has led to developing some of the world's most-used software, including the Firefox browser, the Linux operating system, and the Apache webserver.

Some people are concerned that open-source software can be vulnerable to security risks since the source code is available. Others counter that because the source code is freely available, many programmers have contributed to open-source software projects, making the code less buggy and adding features, and fixing bugs much faster than closed-source software.

Many businesses are wary of open-source software precisely because the code is available for anyone to see. They feel that this increases the risk of an attack. Others counter that this openness decreases the risk because the code is exposed to thousands of programmers who can incorporate code changes to patch vulnerabilities quickly.

In summary, some benefits of the open-source model are:

- The software is available for free.
- The software source code is available; it can be examined and reviewed before it is installed.
- The large community of programmers who work on open-source projects leads to quick bug-fixing and feature additions.

Some benefits of the closed-source model are:

- Providing a financial incentive for software developers or companies
- Technical support from the company that developed the software.

Today there are thousands of open-source software applications available for download. An example of open-source productivity software is Open Office Suite. One good place to search for open-source software is sourceforge.net, where thousands of software applications are available for free download.

Software Licenses

The companies or developers own the software they create. The software is protected by law either through patents, copyright, or licenses. It is up to the software owners to grant their users the right to use the software through the terms of the licenses.

For closed-source vendors, the terms vary depending on the price the users are willing to pay. Examples include single user, single installation, multi-users, multi-installations, per network, or machine.

They have specific permission levels for open-source vendors to grant using the source code and set the modified version conditions. Examples include free to distribute, remix, adapt for non-commercial use but with the condition that the newly revised source code must also be licensed under identical terms. While open-source vendors don't make money by charging for their software, they generate revenues through donations or selling technical support or related services. For example, Wikipedia is a widely popular and online free-content encyclopedia used by millions of users. Yet, it relies mainly on donations to sustain its staff and infrastructure.

Reference

TIOBE Index for August 2020. Retrieved September 4, 2020, from https://www.tiobe.com

This page titled 3.4: Software Creation is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **3.4: Software Creation** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

3.5: Summary

The software gives the instructions that tell the hardware what to do. There are two basic categories of software: operating systems and applications. Operating systems provide access to the computer hardware and make system resources available. Application software is designed to meet a specific goal. Productivity software is a subset of application software that provides basic business functionality to a personal computer: word processing, spreadsheets, and presentations. An ERP system is a software application with a centralized database that is implemented across the entire organization. Cloud computing is a software delivery method that runs on any computer with a web browser and access to the Internet. Software is developed through a process called programming, in which a programmer uses a programming language to put together the logic needed to create the program. The software can be an open-source or a closed-source model, and users or developers are granted different licensing terms.

This page titled 3.5: Summary is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **3.5: Summary** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

3.6: Study Questions

Study Questions

1. Give your own definition of software. Explain the key terms in your definition.
2. Identify the key functions of the operating system
3. Match which of the following are operating systems and which are applications: Microsoft Excel, Google Chrome, iTunes, Windows, Android, Angry Birds.
4. List your favorite software application and explain what tasks it helps you accomplish
5. Explain what is a “killer” app and identify the killer app for the PC
6. List at least three basic categories of mobile apps and give an example of each.
7. Explain what an ERP system does.
8. Explain the difference between open-source software and closed-source software. Give an example of each.
9. Describe what a software license is.
10. Explain the process of creating a software program.

Exercises

1. Go online and find a case study about the implementation of an ERP system. Was it successful? How long did it take? Does the case study tell you how much money the organization spent?
2. What ERP system does your university or place of employment use? Find out which one they use and see how it compares to other ERP systems.
3. If you were running a small business with limited funds for information technology, would you consider using cloud computing? Find some web-based resources that support your decision.
4. Download and install Open Office. Use it to create a document or spreadsheet. How does it compare to Microsoft Office? Does the fact that you got it for free make it feel less valuable?
5. Go to sourceforge.net and review their most downloaded software applications. Report back on the variety of applications you find. Then pick one that interests you and report back on what it does, the kind of technical support offered, and the user reviews.
6. Go online to research the security risks of open-source software. Write a short analysis giving your opinion on the different risks discussed.
7. What are three examples of programming languages? What makes each of these languages useful to programmers?

This page titled 3.6: Study Questions is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **3.6: Study Questions** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

4: Data and Databases

Learning Objectives

Upon successful completion of this chapter, you will be able to:

- Explain the differences between data, information, and knowledge;
- Define the term database and identify the steps to creating one;
- Describe the role of a database management system;
- Describe the characteristics of a data warehouse; and
- Define data mining and describe its role in an organization.

This chapter explores how organizations use information systems to turn data into information and knowledge to be used for competitive advantage. We will discuss how different types of data are captured and managed, different types of databases, and how individuals and organizations use them.

4.1: Introduction to Data and Databases
4.2: Examples of Data
4.3: Structured Query Language
4.4: Designing a Database
4.5: Sidebar- The Difference between a Database and a Spreadsheet
4.6: Big Data
4.7: Data Warehouse
4.8: Data Mining
4.9: Database Management Systems
4.10: Enterprise Databases
4.11: Knowledge Management
4.12: Sidebar- What is data science?
4.13: Summary
4.14: Study Questions

This page titled 4: Data and Databases is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

4.1: Introduction to Data and Databases

Introduction

You have already been introduced to the first two components of information systems: hardware and software. However, those two components by themselves do not make a computer useful. Imagine if you turned on a computer, started typing a document, but could not save a document. Imagine if you opened your music app, but there was no music to play. Imagine opening a web browser, but there were no web pages. Without data, hardware and software are not very useful! Data is the third component of an information system.

Data, Information, Knowledge, and Wisdom

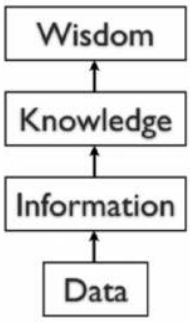


Figure **4.1.1**: Data to Wisdom. Image by David T. Bourgeois is licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0

Data is raw bits and pieces of information with no context, for example, your driver's license or your first name. The information system helps organize this information in a designed systematic manner to be useful to the user. The users can be individuals or businesses. This organized collection of interrelated data is called a database. The two highest levels of data are quantitative or qualitative. To know which to use depends on the question to be answered and the available resources. Quantitative data is numeric, the result of a measurement, count, or some other mathematical calculation. A quantitative example would be how many 5th graders attended music camp this summer. Qualitative data consist of words, descriptions, and narratives. A qualitative example would be a camper wearing a red tee-shirt. A number can be considered qualitative as well. If I tell you my favorite number is 5, that is qualitative data because it is descriptive, not the result of a measurement or mathematical calculation.

When using qualitative data and quantitative data, we need to understand the context of its use. There are advantages and disadvantages to each. This table encapsulates the advantages and disadvantages when gathering data.

Qualitative Data

Advantages	Disadvantages
• Can give a nuanced understanding of the perspectives and needs of program participants • Can help support or explain results indicated in quantitative analysis • Source of detailed or “rich” information that can be used to identify patterns of behavior	• May lend itself to working with smaller populations; may not be representative of larger demographics • Data analysis can be time-consuming • Analysis can be subjective; there is potential for evaluator bias in analysis and collection.

Quantitative Data

Advantages	Disadvantages
• Clear and specific • Accurate and reliable if properly analyzed • It can be easily communicated as graphs and charts • Many large datasets already exist that can be analyzed	• Data collection methods provide respondents with a limited number of response options • Can require complex sampling procedures • May not accurately describe a complex situation • Some expertise with the statistical analysis required

By itself, data is a collection of components waiting to be analyzed. To be useful, it needs to be given context. Users and designers create meaning as they collect, reference, and organize the data. Information typically involves manipulating raw data to obtain an indication of magnitude, trends, and patterns in the data for a purpose. Returning to the example above, if I told you that “15, 23, 14, and 85″ are the

numbers of students that had registered for an upcoming camp, that would be information. By adding the context – that the numbers represent the count of students registering for specific classes – I have added context to data which now is information. Information is data that has been analyzed, processed, structured, and avails itself to be useful.

Once we collect and understand the data, we put it into context, aggregate it, and analyze it. We then have information, and we can use it to make decisions for the individual and our organization. We can say that this consumption of information produces knowledge. . Knowledge can be viewed as information that facilitates action. This knowledge can be used to make decisions, set policies, and even spark innovation.

The final step up the information ladder is the step from knowledge (knowing a lot about a topic) to wisdom.

Wisdom is experience coupled with understanding and insight. We can say that someone has wisdom when combining their knowledge and experience to produce a deeper understanding of a topic. It often takes many years to develop wisdom on a particular topic and requires patience and expertise.

Figure 4.1.2: Data Shown on Monitors. Image by Gerd Altmann from Pixabay is licensed under CC-BY-SA 2.0

This page titled 4.1: Introduction to Data and Databases is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **4.1: Introduction to Data and Databases** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

4.2: Examples of Data

Data can be anything. Some examples of data are weights, prices, costs, numbers of items sold, names, places. Almost all software programs require data to do something useful. It can be straightforward, as a name of a place, a person, or a number. An example would be editing a document in a word processor such as Microsoft Word, the document you are working on is the data. The word-processing software can manipulate the data: create a new document, duplicate a document, or modify a document. Today we have a new type of data called biometrics, which are physical or behavioral human characteristics that can digitally identify a person. Examples would be facial recognition used for passports. Fingerprint authentication is used to unlock smartphones. Iris recognition uses high-resolution images of the iris. This data is stored for future identification. Many governments and high-security companies use iris recognition because it is considered to be errorless when identifying individuals.

Databases

Many information systems aim to transform data into information to generate knowledge that can be used for decision-making. To do this, the system must take or read the data, then put the data into context, and provide tools for aggregation and analysis. A database is designed for just such a purpose.

A database is an organized, meaningful collection of related information. It is an organized collection because, in a database, all data is interrelated and associated with other data. All information in a database should be related; separate databases should be created to manage unrelated information. For example, a database that contains information about employees' payroll should not also hold information about the company's stock prices. Digital databases include things created by MS Excel, such as tables to more complicated databases used every day by people, from checking your balance at the bank to accessing medical records and online shopping. Databases help us to eliminate redundant information. It ensures more effective ways to access searches. Back in the day, databases would be a filing cabinet. For this text, we will only consider digital databases.

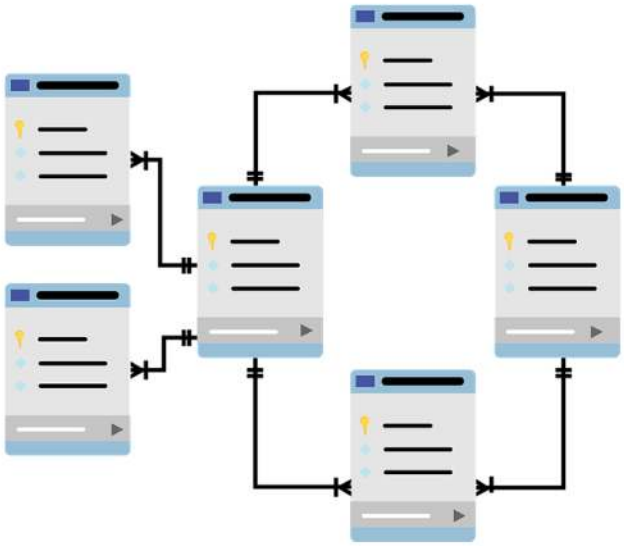


Figure 4.2.1: Relational Database. Image by mcmurry julie from Pixabay is licensed under CC-BY-SA 2.0

Relational Databases

Databases can be organized in many different ways and thus take many forms. DBMS (Database Management System) is software that facilitates the organization and manipulation of data. DBMS functions as an interface between the database and the end-user. The software is designed to store, define, retrieve and manage the data in the database. Other forms of databases today are relational databases. Examples of relational databases are Oracle (RDBMS), MySQL, SQL, and PostgreSQL. A relational database is one in which stores data in an organized fashion of rows and columns, which will create one or more tables of related information. Each table has a set of fields, which define the nature of the data stored in the table. A record is one instance of a set of fields in a table. To visualize this, think of an excel spreadsheet, the records as the rows of the table and the fields as the table columns. In the example below, we have a table of student information, with each row representing a student and each column

representing one piece of information about the student. The relational database model does not scale well. The term scale here refers to a larger and larger database being distributed on a larger number of computers connected via a network. Some companies are looking to provide large-scale database solutions by moving away from the relational model to other, more flexible models. For example, Google now offers the App Engine Datastore, which is based on NoSQL. Developers can use the App Engine Datastore to develop applications that access data from anywhere in the world. Amazon.com offers several database services for enterprise use, including Amazon RDS, a relational database service, and Amazon DynamoDB, a NoSQL enterprise solution.

Relational Database Example

Figure **4.2.2**: Relational database table adapted from David Bourgeois, Ph.D. is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Fields (Columns)				
Records (Rows)	First Name	Last Name	Major	Birthdate
	Ann Marie	Strong	Pre-Law	2/27/1997
	Evan	Right	Business	12/4/1996
	Michelle	Smith	Math	6/27/1995

This page titled 4.2: Examples of Data is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **4.2: Examples of Data** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

4.3: Structured Query Language

Once you have a database designed and loaded with data, how will you do something useful with it? The primary way to work with a relational database is to use Structured Query Language, SQL (pronounced “sequel,” or stated as S-Q-L). Almost all applications that work with databases (such as database management systems, discussed below) use SQL to analyze and manipulate relational data. As its name implies, SQL is a language that can be used to work with a relational database or for streaming processing in a relational data stream management system. From a simple request for data to a complex update operation, SQL is a mainstay of programmers and database administrators. To give you a taste of what SQL might look like, here are a couple of examples using our Student Clubs database.

• The following query will retrieve a list of the first and last names of the club presidents:

SELECT "First Name," "Last Name" FROM "Students" WHERE "Students.ID" =

• The following query will create a list of the number of students in each club, listing the club name and then the number of members:

SELECT "Clubs.Club Name", COUNT("Memberships.Student ID") FROM "Clubs"

An in-depth description of how SQL works is beyond this introductory text's scope. Still, these examples should give you an idea of the power of using SQL to manipulate relational data. Many database packages, such as Microsoft Access, allow you to visually create the query you want to construct and then generate the SQL query for you.

Rows and Columns in a Table

In a relational database, all the tables are related by one or more fields so that it is possible to connect all the tables in the database through the field(s) they have in common. For each table, one of the fields is identified as a primary key. This key is the unique identifier for each record in the table. To help you understand these terms further, let’s walk through the process of designing the following database.

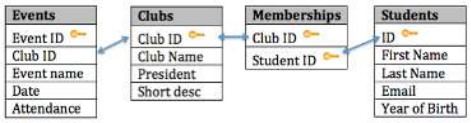


Figure 4.3.1: Data design flow. Image by David Bourgeois, Ph.D. is licensed under CC BY 4.0

This page titled 4.3: Structured Query Language is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **4.3: Structured Query Language** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

4.4: Designing a Database

Designing a Database

Suppose a university wants to create a database to track participation in student clubs. After interviewing several people, the design team learns that implementing the system is to give better insight into how the university funds clubs. This will be accomplished by tracking how many members each club has and how active the clubs are. The team decides that the system must keep track of the clubs, their members, and their events. Using this information, the design team determines that the following tables need to be created:

- Clubs: this will track the club name, the club president, and a short description of the club.
- Students: student name, e-mail, and year of birth.
- Memberships: this table will correlate students with clubs, allowing us to have any given student join multiple clubs.
- Events: this table will track when the clubs meet and how many students showed up.

Now that the design team has determined which tables to create, they need to define the specific information that each table will hold. This requires identifying the fields that will be in each table. For example, Club Name would be one of the fields in the Clubs table. First Name and Last Name would be fields in the Students table. Finally, since this will be a relational database, every table should have a field in common with at least one other table (in other words: they should have a relationship with each other).

To properly create this relationship, a primary key must be selected for each table. This key is a unique identifier for each record in the table. For example, in the Students table, it might be possible to use students' first names to identify them uniquely. However, it is more than likely that some students will share the last name (like Mike, Stefanie, or Chris), so a different field should be selected. A student's email address might be a good choice for a primary key since e-mail addresses are unique. However, a primary key cannot change, so this would mean that if students changed their email addresses, we would have to remove them from the database and then re-insert them – not an attractive proposition. Our solution is to create a value for each student — a user ID — that will act as a primary key. We will also do this for each of the student clubs. This solution is quite common and is the reason you have so many user IDs!

You can see the final database design in the figure below:

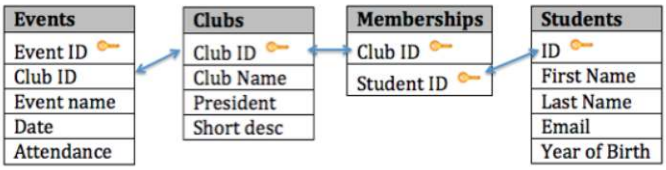


Figure 4.4.1: Data design flow. Image by David Bourgeois, Ph.D. is licensed under CC BY 4.0

With this design, not only do we have a way to organize all of the information we need to meet the requirements, but we have also successfully related all the tables together. Here's what the database tables might look like with some sample data. Note that the Memberships table has the sole purpose of allowing us to relate multiple students to multiple clubs.

Club ID	Club name	President	Short desc
1	Cheese Club	14	To talk about our love of cheese.
2	Chess Club	1	To learn how to become better chess players.
3	Archery Club	6	To compete in archery tournaments.

Table: Clubs

Figure 4.4.2: Table: Clubs. Image by David Bourgeois, Ph.D. is licensed under CC BY 4.0

ID	First Name	Last Name	Email	Year of Birth
1	Peter	Lee	plee@university.edu	1992
2	Jonathan	Edwards	jedwards@university.edu	1994
3	Marilyn	Johnson	mjohnson@university.edu	1993
6	Joe	Kim	jkim@university.edu	1992
12	Haley	Martinez	hmartinez@university.edu	1993
14	John	Mfume	jmfume@university.edu	1991
15	David	Letty	dletty@university.edu	1995

Table: Students

Figure **4.4.3**: Table: Students. Image by David Bourgeois, Ph.D. is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Club ID	Student ID
1	1
1	2
1	14
2	1
2	3
2	5
2	6
3	1
3	6
3	12
3	14
3	15

Table: Memberships

Figure **4.4.4**: Table: Memberships. Image: by David Bourgeois, Ph.D. is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Normalization

When designing a database, one important concept to understand is normalization. In simple terms, to normalize a database means to design it in a way that:

- Reduces redundancy of data between tables easier mapping
- Takes out inconsistent data.
- Information is stored in one place only.
- Gives the table as much flexibility as possible.

In the Student Clubs database design, the design team worked to achieve these objectives. For example, to track memberships, a simple solution might have been to create a Members field in the Clubs table and then list all of the members' names. However, this design would mean that if a student joined two clubs, then his or her information would have to be entered a second time. Instead, the designers solved this problem by using two tables: Students and Memberships.

In this design, when a student joins their first club, we must add the student to the Students table, where their first name, last name, e-mail address, and birth year are entered. This addition to the Students table will generate a student ID. Now we will add a new entry to denote that the student is a specific club member. This is accomplished by adding a record with the student ID and the club ID in the Memberships table. If this student joins a second club, we do not have to duplicate the student's name, e-mail, and birth year; instead, we only need to make another entry in the Memberships table of the second club's ID and the student's ID.

The Student Clubs database design also makes it simple to change the design without major modifications to the existing structure. For example, if the design team was asked to add functionality to the system to track faculty advisors to the clubs, we could easily accomplish this by adding a Faculty Advisors table (similar to the Students table) and then adding a new field to the Clubs table to hold the Faculty Advisor ID.

Data Types

When defining the fields in a database table, we must give each field a data type. For example, the field Birth Year is a year, so it will be a number, while First Name will be text. Most modern databases allow for several different data types to be stored. Some of

the more common data types are listed here:

- Text: for storing non-numeric data that is brief, generally under 256 characters. The database designer can identify the maximum length of the text.
- Number: for storing numbers. There are usually a few different number types selected, depending on how large the largest number will be.
- Yes/No: a special form of the number data type that is (usually) one byte long, with a 0 for “No” or “False” and a 1 for “Yes” or “True.”
- Date/Time: a special form of the number data type can be interpreted as a number or a time.
- Currency: a special form of the number data type that formats all values with a currency indicator and two decimal places.
- Paragraph Text: this data type allows for text longer than 256 characters.
- Object: this data type allows for data storage that cannot be entered via keyboards, such as an image or a music file.

The importance of properly defining data type is to improve the data's integrity and the proper storing location. We must properly define the data type of a field, and a data type tells the database what functions can be performed with the data. For example, if we wish to perform mathematical functions with one of the fields, we must tell the database that the field is a number data type. So if we have a field storing birth year, we can subtract the number stored in that field from the current year to get age.

Allocation of storage space for the defined data must also be identified. For example, if the First Name field is defined as a text(50) data type, fifty characters are allocated for each first name we want to store. However, even if the first name is only five characters long, fifty characters (bytes) will be allocated. While this may not seem like a big deal, if our table ends up holding 50,000 names, we allocate 50 * 50,000 = 2,500,000 bytes for storage of these values. It may be prudent to reduce the field's size, so we do not waste storage space.

This page titled 4.4: Designing a Database is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **4.4: Designing a Database** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

4.5: Sidebar- The Difference between a Database and a Spreadsheet

When introducing the concept of databases to students, they quickly decide that a database is similar to a spreadsheet. There are some similarities, but there are some big differences that we will review. A spreadsheet hopes to grow to a database one day.

Let's start with the spreadsheet. It is easy to create, edit and format. It is simple to use for beginners. It is made up of columns and rows and stores data in an organized fashion similar to a database table. The two leading spreadsheet applications are Google Sheets and Microsoft Excel. One of the very convenient things about spreadsheets is shared accessibility with multiple users. This is not the case with a database.

For simple uses, a spreadsheet can substitute for a database quite well. If a simple listing of rows and columns (a single table) is all that is needed, then creating a database is probably overkill. In our Student Clubs example, if we only needed to track a listing of clubs, the number of members, and the president's contact information, we could get away with a single spreadsheet. However, the need to include a listing of events and members' names would be problematic if tracked with a spreadsheet.

When several types of data must be mixed, or when the relationships between these types of data are complex, then a spreadsheet is not the best solution. A database allows data from several entities (such as students, clubs, memberships, and events) to be related together into one whole. While a spreadsheet does allow you to define what kinds of values can be entered into its cells, a database provides more intuitive and powerful ways to define the types of data that go into each field, reducing possible errors and allowing for easier analysis. Though not good for replacing databases, spreadsheets can be ideal tools for analyzing the data stored in a database. A spreadsheet package can be connected to a specific table or query in a database and used to create charts or perform analysis on that data.

A database has many similarities in looks of a spreadsheet utilizing tables that are made up of columns and rows. The database is a collection of structured raw material. The information is stored on the computer. A spreadsheet is easily editable with its rows and columns; this is not the case of a database. The database is formatted, so the field (column) is preconfigured. The database is also relational in that it has the ability to create relationships between records and tables. Spreadsheets and databases can both be edited by multiple authors. In a database, a log is created as changes are made. This is not the case with a spreadsheet. A spreadsheet is terrific for small projects, but a database would become more useful as the project grows.

Figure 4.5.1: Database computers. Image by Gerd Altmann from Pixabay is licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0

Streaming

Streaming is a new easy way to view on-demand audio or video from a remote server. Companies offer audio and video files from their server that can be accessed remotely by the user. The data is transmitted from their server directly and continuously to your device. Streaming can be accessed by any device that connects to the internet. There is no need for large memory or having to wait for a large file to download. Stream technology is becoming very popular because of its convenience and accessibility. An example of some streaming services is Netflix, iTunes, and YouTube.

Other Types of Databases

The relational database model is the most used today. However, many other database models exist that provide different strengths than the relational model. In the 1960s and 1970s, the hierarchical database model connected data in a hierarchy, allowing for a parent/child relationship between data. The document-centric model allowed for more unstructured data storage by placing data into “documents” that could then be manipulated.

The concept of NoSQL (from the phrase “not only SQL”). NoSQL arose from the need to solve large-scale databases spread over several servers or even across the world. For a relational database to work properly, only one person must be able to manipulate a piece of data at a time, a concept known as record-locking. But with today’s large-scale databases (think Google and Amazon), this is not possible. A NoSQL database can work with data more loosely, allowing for a more unstructured environment, communicating changes to the data over time to all the servers that are part of the database. Many companies collect data for all sorts of reasons, from how many times you visit a site to what you are viewing at the site.

This page titled 4.5: Sidebar- The Difference between a Database and a Spreadsheet is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **4.5: Sidebar- The Difference between a Database and a Spreadsheet** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

4.6: Big Data

Big Data refers to capturing large complex data sets that conventional database tools do not have the processing power to analyze. Storing and analyzing that much data is beyond the power of traditional database management tools. Understanding the best tools and techniques to manage and analyze these large data sets is a problem that governments and businesses alike are trying to solve. Big data comes from many different areas such as text, images, audio, and videos. Businesses use this data and refer to it as predictive analytics or user behavior analytics. Companies such as Walmart and Amazon are now collecting big data, to see what searches their customers are looking at. Think of the number of customers and products these two powerhouses have and the amount of data generated.

This page titled 4.6: Big Data is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **4.6: Big Data** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

4.7: Data Warehouse

As organizations have begun to utilize databases as the centerpiece of their operations, the need to fully understand and leverage the data they are collecting has become more and more apparent. However, directly analyzing the data needed for day-to-day operations is not a good idea; we do not want to tax the company's operations more than we need to. Further, organizations also want to analyze data in a historical sense: How does the data we have today compare with the same data set this time last month or last year? From these needs arose the concept of the data warehouse.

The data warehouse concept is simple: extract data from one or more of the organization's databases and load it into the data warehouse (which is itself another database) for storage and analysis. However, the execution of this concept is not that simple. A data warehouse should be designed so that it meets the following criteria:

- It uses non-operational data. This means that the data warehouse uses a copy of data from the active databases that the company uses in its day-to-day operations, so the data warehouse must pull data from the existing databases on a regular, scheduled basis.
- The data is time-variant. This means that whenever data is loaded into the data warehouse, it receives a timestamp, which allows for comparisons between different time periods.
- The data is standardized. Because the data in a data warehouse usually comes from several different sources, it is possible that the data does not use the same definitions or units. For example, our Events table in our Student Clubs database lists the event dates using the mm/dd/yyyy format (e.g., 01/10/2013). A table in another database might use the format yy/mm/dd (e.g., 13/01/10) for dates. For the data warehouse to match up the dates, a standard date format would have to be agreed upon, and all data loaded into the data warehouse would have to be converted to use this standard format. This process is called extraction-transformation-load (ETL).

There are two primary schools of thought when designing a data warehouse: bottom-up and top-down. The bottom-up approach starts by creating small data warehouses, called data marts, to solve specific business problems. As these data marts are created, they can be combined into a larger data warehouse. The top-down approach suggests that we should start by creating an enterprise-wide data warehouse and then, as specific business needs are identified, create smaller data marts from the data warehouse.

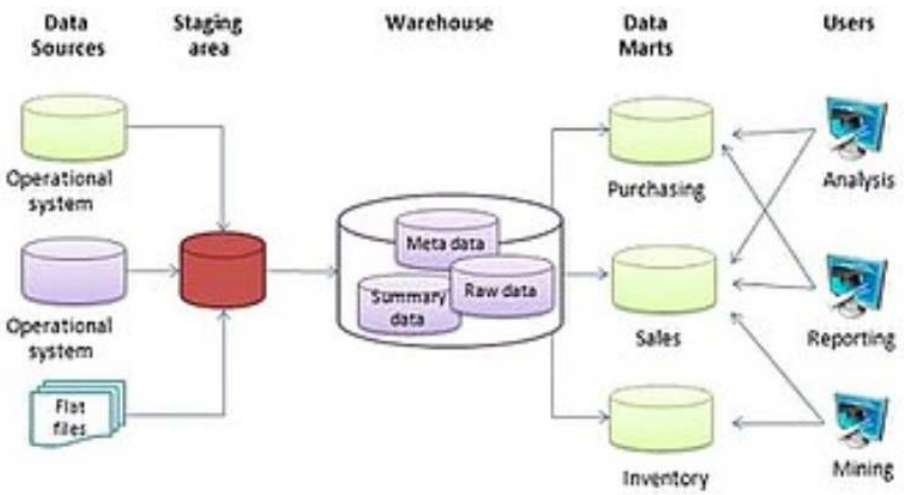


Figure 4.7.1: Data warehouse process (top down). Image by Soha jamil is licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0

Benefits of Data Warehouses

Organizations find data warehouses quite beneficial for many reasons:

- Ability to integrate data from multiple systems formatted with different software and compile it to gain deeper insight.
- The process of developing a data warehouse forces an organization to understand the data better than it is currently collecting and, equally important, what data is not being collected.

- A data warehouse provides a centralized view of all data being collected across the enterprise and provides a means for determining inconsistent data.
- Once all data is identified as consistent, an organization can generate one version of the truth. This is important when the company wants to report consistent statistics about itself, such as revenue or employees' numbers.
- By having a data warehouse, snapshots of data can be taken over time. This creates a historical record of data, which allows for an analysis of trends.
- A data warehouse provides tools to combine data, which can provide new information and analysis.

This page titled 4.7: Data Warehouse is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **4.7: Data Warehouse** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

4.8: Data Mining

Data mining is the process of sorting through big data (measured in terabytes). In the past, there was a lack of data to analyze. The challenge is an overabundance of data that must be reviewed, which is called data overload. This becomes an issue because the user needs to evaluate which information is useful and which is not. Many businesses do mining to get detailed insight on their customers, products and to optimize business decisions. The analysis is executed with sophisticated programs. The programs can combine multiple databases. The end effect is so complex that companies must find a way to store the data. Data warehouses are needed. The data warehouse is where the information is stored and processed from the data mining. The price for a simple warehouse could start at $10 million.

Companies like Google, Netflix, Amazon, and Facebook are big users of data mining. They seek to find out who their consumer is and how best to keep them and sell them more products. They also review their products. The means used are reviewing data and finding trends, patterns, and associations to make decisions. Generally, data mining is accomplished through automated means against extensive data sets, such as a data warehouse.

Examples of data mining include:

- An analysis of sales from a large grocery chain might determine that milk is purchased more frequently the day after it rains in cities with a population of less than 50,000.
- A bank may find that loan applicants whose bank accounts show particular deposit and withdrawal patterns are not good credit risks.
- A baseball team may find those collegiate baseball players with specific statistics in hitting, pitching, and fielding for more successful major league players.

In some cases, a data-mining project is begun with a hypothetical result in mind. For example, a grocery chain may already have some idea that the buying patterns change after it rains and want to get a deeper understanding of exactly what is happening. In other cases, there are no presuppositions, and a data-mining program is run against large data sets to find patterns and associations.

This page titled 4.8: Data Mining is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **4.8: Data Mining** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

4.9: Database Management Systems

A database looks like one or more files. For the data in the database to be read, changed, added, or removed, a software program must access it. The software creates a database by building tables, forms, reports, and other important variables. Many software applications have this ability: iTunes can read its database to give you a listing of its songs (and play the songs); your mobile-phone software can interact with your list of contacts. Companies of all sizes use this software to enable themselves to streamline the data they have collected to be useful for multiple purposes such as marketing, customer service, and sales. Database management systems help businesses to collect complex data and customize it for their own use. When selecting Database Management Software (DBMS,) the company needs to know what they want to utilize and establish goals. Questions that need to be answered are; What software can you use to create a database, change a database's structure, or analyze? For example, Apache OpenOffice.org Base can create, modify, and analyze databases in open-database (ODB) format. Microsoft's Access DBMS is used to work with databases in its own Microsoft Access Database format. Both Access and Base have the ability to read and write to other database formats as well.

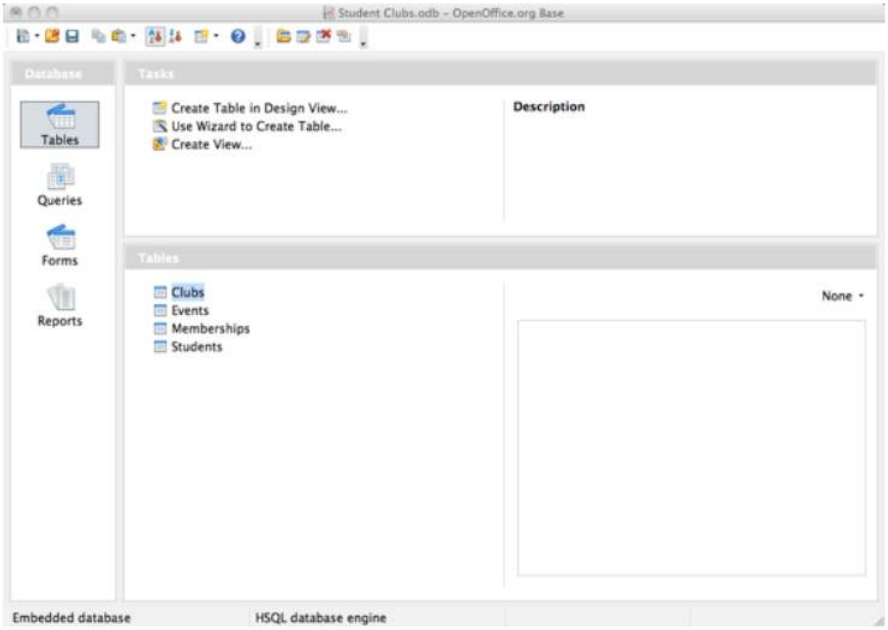


Figure 4.9.1: Open Office database management system. Image by David Bourgeois, Ph.D. is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Microsoft Access and Open Office Base are examples of personal database-management systems. These systems are primarily used to develop and analyze single-user databases. These databases are not meant to be shared across a network or the Internet but are instead installed on a particular device and work with a single user at a time.

This page titled 4.9: Database Management Systems is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **4.9: Database Management Systems** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

4.10: Enterprise Databases

Small and large organizations utilize enterprise databases for managing when collecting large complex data. An enterprise database is robust enough to handle multiple users' queries successfully simultaneously and can handle a range of 100 to 10,000 users at a time. (Technopedia, 2020). Computers have become networked and are now joined worldwide via the Internet, and a class of databases has emerged that can be accessed by two, ten, or even a million people. These databases are sometimes installed on a single computer to be accessed by a group of people at a single location or a small company. They can also be installed over several servers worldwide, meant to be accessed by millions in large companies. These relational enterprise database packages are built and supported by companies such as Oracle, Microsoft, and IBM. The open-source MySQL is also an enterprise database. Open-source databases are free and can be shared, storing vital information in software that the organization can control. An open-source database allows users to create a system based on their unique requirements and business needs. The source code can be customized to match any user preference. Open-source databases address the need to analyze data from a growing number of new applications at a lower cost. The deluge of social media and the Internet of Things (IoT) has ushered an age of massive data that needs to be collected and analyzed. The data only has value if an enterprise can analyze it to find useful patterns or real-time insights. The data contains vast amounts of information that can overload a traditional database. The flexibility and cost-effectiveness of open source database software have revolutionized database management systems. (Omnisci, 2020).

Sidebar: What Is Metadata?

The term metadata can be understood as “data about data.” For example, when looking at one of Year of Birth's values in the Students table, the data itself may be “1992″. The metadata about that value would be the field name Year of Birth, the last updated time, and the data type (integer). Another example of metadata could be for an MP3 music file, like the one shown in the image below; information such as the song's length, the artist, the album, the file size, and even the album cover art is classified as metadata. When a database is being designed, a “data dictionary” is created to hold the metadata, defining its fields and structure.

Data Governance

Data governance is the process of taking data and managing the availability, integrity, and usability in enterprise systems. Proper data governance ensures the data is consistent, trustworthy, and secured. We are in a time when organizations must pay close attention to privacy regulations and increasingly need to rely more on data analytics to optimize decision making and optimize operations. Data governance can be used at both the micro and macro levels. When we refer to micro, the focus is on the individual organization to ensure high data quality throughout the lifecycle to achieve optimal business objectives. The macro-level refers to cross-border flows by countries which are called international data governance.

References

Omnisci (2020). *Definition of an Open Source Database*. Retrieved September 1, 2020, from https://www.omnisci.com/technical-glossary/open-source-database#:~:text=An%20open%20source%20database%20has,is%20protected%20to%20prevent%20copying.

Technopedia, (2020) *Definition of Enterprise Database.* Retrieved September 1, 2020, from https://www.techopedia.com/definition/31683

This page titled 4.10: Enterprise Databases is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **4.10: Enterprise Databases** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

4.11: Knowledge Management

We end the chapter with a discussion on the concept of knowledge management (KM). All companies accumulate knowledge over the course of their existence. Some of this knowledge is written down or saved, but not in an organized fashion. Much of this knowledge is not written down; instead, it is stored inside its employees' heads. Knowledge management is the process of formalizing the capture, indexing, and storing of the company's knowledge to benefit from the experiences and insights that the company has captured during its existence.

Privacy Concerns

Figure 4.11.1: Cybersecurity. Image by Pete Linforth from Pixabay is licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0

The increasing power of data mining has caused concerns for many, especially in the area of privacy. It is becoming easier in today's digital world than ever to take data from disparate sources and combine them to do new forms of analysis. In fact, a whole industry has sprung up around this technology: data brokers. These firms combine publicly accessible data with information obtained from the government and other sources to create vast warehouses of data about people and companies that they can then sell. This subject will be covered in detail in chapter 12 – the chapter on the ethical concerns of information systems.

This page titled 4.11: Knowledge Management is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **4.11: Knowledge Management** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

4.12: Sidebar- What is data science?

Sidebar: What is data science?

Data science takes structured and unstructured data and uses scientific methods, processes, algorithms, and systems to extract knowledge and insight. It begins by procuring data from many sources such as web servers, logs, databases, APIs (application program interface), and online repositories. Once the acquisition has happened, the data must be cleaned and pipeline data. This is done by sorting and organizing relevant and usable data; this is the transformation process. Data Modeling is next; the goal is to create the best modeling that suits the company's needs when using the data. This can be done using metrics, algorithms, and analytics. The goal is to progress to AI and deep learning or machine learning. Data science problem solves company issues using data.

- Structured Data - Is data that is found in a fixed field within a record or file. It includes data contained in relational databases and spreadsheets. Such as:
  - Date
  - Time
  - Census Data
  - Facebook “Likes”
- Unstructured Data - Is information that is not organized and does not have a pre-defined model. Such as:
  - Body of emails
  - Tweets
  - Facebook Status
  - Video Transcripts

What is data analytics?

Data Analytics takes raw data gathered from data mining and analyzes the information to uncover relationships and patterns to find insight into the data when using it. Companies use these analytics to optimize problem-solving and assist in decision-making. The information is helpful to understand who your consumer is as well as marketing your company or product. This is all helpful to create efficiency and streamline operations. Data continuously being collected can then be adjusted as new criteria happen. Today's data analytics are deeper, larger in abundance, and retrieved quicker than yesteryear. The information is more accurate and detailed, which accelerates successful problem-solving.

Figure 4.12.1: Analytic information. Image by xresch from Pixabay is licensed CC BY-SA 2.0

Business Intelligence and Business Analytics

This is now a new trend. With tools such as data warehousing and data mining at their disposal, businesses learn how to use the information to their advantage. The term business intelligence is used to describe how organizations use to take data they are collecting and analyze it to obtain a competitive advantage. Besides using data from their internal databases, firms often purchase information from data brokers to understand their industries' big-picture understanding. Business analytics is the term used to describe internal company data to improve business processes and practices.

This page titled 4.12: Sidebar- What is data science? is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **4.12: Sidebar- What is data science?** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

4.13: Summary

Summary

In this chapter, we learned about the role that data and databases play in the context of information systems. Data is made up of small facts and information without context. If you give data context, then you have information. Knowledge is gained when information is consumed and used for decision-making. A database is an organized collection of related information. Relational databases are the most widely used type of database, where data is structured into tables, and all tables must be related to each other through unique identifiers. A database management system (DBMS) is a software application used to create and manage databases and take the form of a personal DBMS, used by one small business or person versus an enterprise DBMS that multiple users can use. A data warehouse is a special form of database that takes data from other databases in an enterprise and organizes it for analysis. Data mining is the process of looking for patterns and relationships in large data sets. Many businesses use databases, big data, data warehouses, and data-mining techniques to produce business intelligence and gain a competitive advantage.

This page titled 4.13: Summary is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **4.13: Summary** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

4.14: Study Questions

Study Questions

1. What is the difference between data, information, and knowledge?
2. Explain in your own words the difference between hardware and software components of information systems.
3. What is the difference between quantitative data and qualitative data? In what situations could the number 63 be considered qualitative data?
4. What are the characteristics of a relational database?
5. When would using a personal DBMS make sense?
6. What is the difference between a spreadsheet and a database? List three differences between them.
7. Describe what the term normalization means.
8. What is Big Data?
9. Name a database you interact with frequently. What would some of the field names be?
10. Describe the benefits and what open-source data is.
11. Name three advantages of using a data warehouse.
12. What is data mining?

Exercises

1. Review the design of the Student Clubs database earlier in this chapter. Reviewing the lists of data types given, what data types would you assign to each of the fields in each of the tables. What lengths would you assign to the text fields?
2. Review structured and unstructured data and list five reasons to use each.
3. Using Microsoft Access, download the database file of comprehensive baseball statistics from the website
4. SeanLahman.com. (If you don't have Microsoft Access, you can download an abridged version of the file here that is compatible with Apache Open Office). Review the structure of the tables included in the database. Come up with three different data-mining experiments you would like to try, and explain which fields in which tables would have to be analyzed.
5. Do some original research and find two examples of data mining. Summarize each example and then write about what the two examples have in common.
6. Conduct some independent research on the process of business intelligence. Using at least two scholarly or practitioner sources, write a two-page paper giving examples of how business intelligence is being used.
7. Conduct some independent research on the latest technologies being used for knowledge management. Using at least two scholarly or practitioner sources, write a two-page paper giving examples of software applications or new technologies being used in this field.

This page titled 4.14: Study Questions is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **4.14: Study Questions** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

5: Networking and Communication

Learning Objectives

Upon successful completion of this chapter, you will be able to:

- Understand how multiple networks are used in everyday life.
- Define how topologies and devices are connected in a small to medium-sized business network.
- Understand the basic characteristics of a network that supports communication in a small to medium-sized business.
- Describe trends in networking that will affect the use of networks in small to medium-sized businesses.

Today's computing and smart devices are expected to be always-connected devices to support the way we learn, communicate, do business, work, and play, in any place, on any devices, and at any time. In this chapter, we review the history of networking, how the Internet works, and the use of multiple networks in organizations today.

5.1: Introduction to Networking and Communication
5.2: A Brief History of the Internet
5.3: Networking Today
5.4: How has the Human Network Influenced you?
5.5: Providing Resources in a Network
5.6: LANs, WANs, and the Internet
5.7: Network Representations
5.8: The Internet, Intranets, and Extranets
5.9: Internet Connections
5.10: The Network as a Platform Converged Networks
5.11: Reliable Network
5.12: The Changing Network Environment Network Trends
5.13: Technology Trends in the Home
5.14: Network Security
5.15: Summary
5.16: Study Questions

This page titled 5: Networking and Communication is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

5.1: Introduction to Networking and Communication

We are at a basic turning point with many innovations to expand and engage our capacity to communicate. The globalization of the Web has succeeded faster than anybody has envisioned. The way social, commercial, political, and individual motivation happens is quickly changing to keep up with the advancement of this worldwide network. Within our improvement network, innovators will utilize the Web as a beginning point for their efforts, creating modern items and administrations particularly planned to require advantage of the network capabilities. As designers thrust the limits of what is conceivable, the capabilities of the interconnected systems that shape the Web will expand part within these projects' victory.

This chapter presents a brief history of the Internet and the stage of information systems upon which our social and commerce connections progressively depend. The fabric lays the foundation for investigating the administrations, innovations, and issues experienced by network experts as they plan, construct, and keep up the present-day network.

This page titled 5.1: Introduction to Networking and Communication is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **5.1: Introduction to Networking and Communication** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

5.2: A Brief History of the Internet

In the Beginning: ARPANET

The story of the Internet and networking can be traced back to the late 1950s. The US was in the Cold War's depths with the USSR, and each nation closely watched the other to determine which would gain a military or intelligence advantage. In 1957, the Soviets surprised the US with the launch of Sputnik, propelling us into the space age. In response to Sputnik, the US Government created the Advanced Research Projects Agency (ARPA), whose initial role was to ensure that the US was not surprised again. From ARPA, now called DARPA (Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency), the Internet first sprang. ARPA was the center of computing research in the 1960s, but there was just one problem: many computers could not talk to each other. In 1968, ARPA sent out a request for a communication technology proposal that would allow different computers located around the country to be integrated into one network. Twelve companies responded to the request, and a company named Bolt, Beranek, and Newman (BBN) won the contract and developed the first protocol for the network (Roberts, 1978). They began work right away and completed the job just one year later: in September 1969, the ARPANET was turned on. The first four nodes were at UCLA, Stanford, MIT, and the University of Utah.

The Internet and the World Wide Web

Over the next decade, the ARPANET grew and gained popularity. During this time, other networks also came into existence. Different organizations were connected to different networks. This led to a problem: the networks could not talk to each other. Each network used its own proprietary language or protocol (see sidebar for the definition of protocol) to send information back and forth. This problem was solved using the transmission control protocol/Internet protocol (TCP/IP). TCP/IP was designed to allow networks running on different protocols to have an intermediary protocol that would allow them to communicate. So as long as a network supporting TCP/IP, users could communicate with all other networks running TCP/IP. TCP/IP quickly became the standard protocol and allowed networks to communicate with each other. We first got the term Internet from this breakthrough, which means “an interconnected network of networks.”

As we moved into the 1980s, computers were added to the Internet at an increasing rate. These computers were primarily from government, academic, and research organizations. Much to the engineers' surprise, the early popularity of the Internet was driven by the use of electronic mail (see sidebar below). Using the Internet in these early days was not easy. To access information on another server, you had to know how to type in the commands necessary to access it and know the name of that device. That all changed in 1990 when Tim Berners-Lee introduced his World Wide Web project, which provided an easy way to navigate the Internet through the use of linked text (hypertext). The World Wide Web gained even more steam with the release of the Mosaic browser in 1993, which allowed graphics and text to be combined to present information and navigate the Internet. The Mosaic browser took off in popularity and was soon superseded by Netscape Navigator, the first commercial web browser, in 1994. The chart below shows the growth in internet users globally.

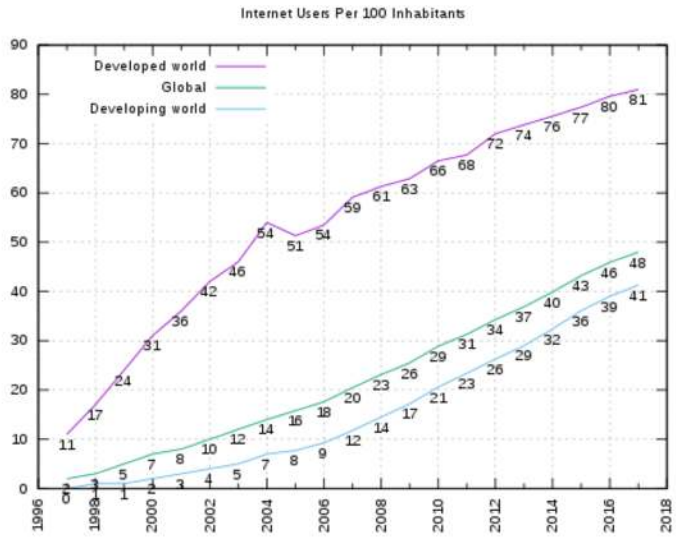


Figure 5.2.1: Graph of "Internet users per 100 inhabitants 1997 to 2017", years on the x-axis, number of users on the y-axis, according to the International Telecommunication Union (ITU). Image by Jeff Ogden (W163) and Jim Scarborough (Ke4roh) is licensed CC BY-SA

According to the International Telecommunications Union (ITU, 2020), over 53.6% or 4.1 billion people worldwide are using the internet, by the end of 2019.

The Internet has evolved from Web 1.0 to 2.0 (discussed in Chapter 1) to the many popular social media websites today.

Sidebar: “Killer” Apps for the Internet

When the personal computer was created, it was a great little toy for technology hobbyists and armchair programmers. As soon as the spreadsheet was invented, businesses took notice, and the rest is history. The spreadsheet was the killer app for the personal computer: people bought PCs to run spreadsheets.

The Internet was originally designed as a way for scientists and researchers to share information and computing power among themselves. However, as soon as electronic mail was invented, it began driving demand for the Internet.

We are seeing this again today with social networks, such as Facebook, Instagram. Many who weren’t convinced to have an online presence now feel left out without a social media account.

These killer apps and widespread adoption of the internet have driven explosive growth for information systems globally.

Sidebar: The Internet and the World Wide Web Are Not the Same Things

Many times, the terms “Internet” and “World Wide Web,” or even just “the web,” are used interchangeably. However, they are not the same thing at all!

The Internet is an interconnected network of networks. Many services run across the Internet: electronic mail, voice and video, file transfers, and, yes, the World Wide Web. The World Wide Web is simply one piece of the Internet. It is made up of web servers with HTML pages being viewed on devices with web browsers.

References

ITU estimate of global population using the internet. Retrieved September 6, 2020, from https://www.itu.int/en/ITU-D/Statistics/Pages/stat/default.aspx

Roberts, Lawrence G., *The Evolution of Packet Switching, (1978, November)*. Retrieved on September 6, 2020, from www.ismlab.usf.edu/dcom/Ch10_Roberts_EvolutionPacketSwitching_IEEE_1978.pdf

This page titled 5.2: A Brief History of the Internet is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **5.2: A Brief History of the Internet** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

5.3: Networking Today

Networks in Our Daily Lives

Among all of the fundamentals for human presence, the need to interact with others ranks underneath our need to maintain life. Communication is nearly as imperative to us as our dependence on air, water, nourishment, and shelter.

Today, networking systems have enabled people to connect from anywhere. Individuals can communicate and collaborate immediately with others. News ideas and discoveries are shared with the world in seconds. People can indeed interface and play with others without the physical barriers of seas and landmasses from wherever they locate.

Figure 5.3.1: Global Networking. Image by Gerd Altmann from Pixabay is licensed CC BY 2.0

Technology Then and Now

Envision a world without the Internet. No more Google, YouTube, texting, Facebook, Wikipedia, web-based gaming, Netflix, iTunes, and simple access to current data. No more social media, staying away from lines by shopping on the web, or rapidly looking into telephone numbers and guide headings to different areas at the snap of a finger. How unique would our lives be without the entirety of this? That was the world we lived in only 15 to 20 years back, as discussed in Chapter 1. Throughout the years, information systems have gradually extended and been repurposed to improve personal satisfaction for individuals all over the place.

No Boundaries

Progressions in systems administration advancements are maybe the most noteworthy changes on the planet today. They assist with making a world where national fringes, geographic separations, and physical confinements become less important, introducing ever-lessening obstacles.

Figure 5.3.2: Registered trademark of Cisco Systems, Inc.

Cisco Systems Inc. alludes to this as the human network. The human network fixates on the effect of the Internet and networks on individuals and organizations.

This page titled 5.3: Networking Today is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **5.3: Networking Today** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

5.4: How has the Human Network Influenced you?

Networks Support the Way We Learn

Networks have changed how we learn. Access to top-notch guidance is not, at this point, confined to understudies living in the vicinity to where that guidance is being conveyed.

Online distance learning has evacuated geographic hindrances and improved opportunities for students. Vigorous and dependable networks bolster and improve student learning encounters. They convey learning material in a wide scope of arrangements, including intelligent exercises, appraisals, and criticism.

Networks Support the Way We Communicate

The globalization of the Internet has introduced new types of correspondence that engage people to make data that a worldwide crowd can access.

Figure 5.4.1: Silver iMac near iPhone on brown wooden table. Image by Domenico Loia on Unsplash is licensed CC BY SA 2.0

A few types of communication include:

- **Messaging:** Texting empowers moment constant correspondence between at least two individuals. WhatsApp and Skype are examples of messaging tools that have gained huge popularity.
- **Internet-based life**: Social media comprises intelligent sites where individuals and networks make and offer client-created content with companions, family, peers, and the world. Facebook, Twitter, and LinkedIn are among the biggest social media platforms at this time.
- **Joint effort tools**: Without the limitations of area or time region, cooperation instruments permit people to speak with one another, frequently across a continuous intelligent video. The expansive circulation of information systems implies that individuals in remote areas can contribute on an equivalent premise with individuals in the core of largely populated places. An example of that would be online gaming, where several players are connected to the same server.
- **Online journals**: Blogs, which is a shortened form of "weblogs." In contrast to business sites, sites give anybody a way to impart their musings to a worldwide crowd without specialized information on website composition.
- **Wikis**: Wikis are website pages that gatherings of individuals can alter and see together. Like an individual diary, an individual often writes a blog, and a wiki collects creations from many people. All things considered, it might be dependent upon increasingly broad surveys and altering. Numerous organizations use wikis as their inner joint effort apparatus.
- **Podcasting**: Podcasting permits individuals to convey their sound chronicles to a wide crowd. The sound document is put on a site (or blog or wiki) where others can download it and play the account on their PCs, workstations, and other cell phones.
- **Distributed (P2P) File Sharing**: Peer-to-Peer document sharing permits individuals to impart records to one another without putting away and downloading them from a local server. The client joins the P2P arrangement by just introducing the P2P programming. Everybody has not grasped P2P document sharing. Numerous individuals are worried about disregarding the laws of copyrighted materials.
    - Napster, which was released in 1999, was the first generation of P2P systems. Some well-known P2P systems are Xunlei, Bittorrent, and Gnutella.

Networks Support the Way We Work

In the business world, information systems were first utilized by organizations for internal uses and to oversee budgetary data, client data, and representative finance frameworks. These business systems advanced to empower the transmission of a wide range of data administrations, including email, video, informing, and communication.

The utilization of systems has been increasingly used to prepare workers for their effectiveness and efficiencies. Internet learning opportunities can diminish tedious and exorbitant travel yet still guarantee that all representatives are sufficiently prepared to play out their occupations in a protected and gainful way.

Networks Support the Way We Play

The Internet is utilized for customary types of amusement. We tune in to listen to music, see or view movies, read whole books and download material for future disconnected access. Live games and shows can be experienced as they are occurring or recorded and viewed on request.

Networked systems empower the making of new types of amusement, for example, internet games. Online multiplayer games have become very popular because they allow friends to play virtually when they can't meet in person.

Indeed, even offline activities are improved utilizing network joint effort administrations. Worldwide, people with the same interests have interacted with each other quickly. We share normal encounters and pastimes well past our nearby neighborhood, city, or locale. Sports fans share opinions and realities about their preferred teams. Gatherers show valued assortments and get expert input about them.

Whatever type of entertainment we appreciate, systems are improving our experience. How would you play on the Internet?

This page titled 5.4: How has the Human Network Influenced you? is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **5.4: How has the Human Network Influenced you?** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

5.5: Providing Resources in a Network

Networks of Many Sizes

Networks come in all sizes. They can go from basic networks consisting of two PCs to networks interfacing with many gadgets.

Basic networks introduced in homes empower sharing of assets, for example, printers, archives, pictures, and music between a couple of nearby PCs.

Worldwide internet users expect always to stay connected to the internet. They expect their connected devices to do the following:

- Stay connected to the internet to complete their work.
- Have the ability to send and receive data fast.
- Have the ability to send small and large quantities of data globally via any device connected to the internet.

Home office networks and small office networks are regularly set up by people who work from home or remote offices. They need to associate with a corporate network or other concentrated assets. Moreover, numerous independently employed business people utilize home office and little office networks to publicize and sell items, request supplies and speak with clients.

The Internet is the biggest network presently. Indeed, the term Internet implies a network of networks. The internet is the global worldwide network that connects millions of computers around the world. A computer can connect to another computer in a different country via the internet.

Clients and Servers

All PCs associated with a network are named hosts. Hosts are also called end devices.

Servers are PCs with programming that empower them to give data, similar to emails or website pages, to other network devices called clients. Each assistance requires separate server programming. For instance, a server requires web server programming to give web administrations to the network. A PC with server programming can offer types of assistance at the same time to one or numerous customers. Furthermore, a solitary PC can run numerous sorts of server programming. It might be vital for one PC to go about as a document server, a web server, and an email server in a home or private company.

Clients are PCs with programming introduced that empower them to ask for and show the server's data. A case of client programming is an internet browser, similar to Chrome or Firefox. A solitary PC can likewise run different kinds of custom programming. For instance, a client can browse email and view a site page while texting and tuning in to Internet radio.

Peer-to-Peer

Client and server programming ordinarily run on discrete PCs, yet it is also feasible for one PC to simultaneously complete the two jobs. In private companies and homes, hosts work as servers or clients on the network. This sort of system is known as a shared network. An example of that would be several users connected to the same printer from their individual devices.

This page titled 5.5: Providing Resources in a Network is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **5.5: Providing Resources in a Network** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

5.6: LANs, WANs, and the Internet

Overview of Network Components

The link between the sender and the receiver can be as simple as a single cable connection between these two devices or more sophisticated as a set of switches and routers between them.

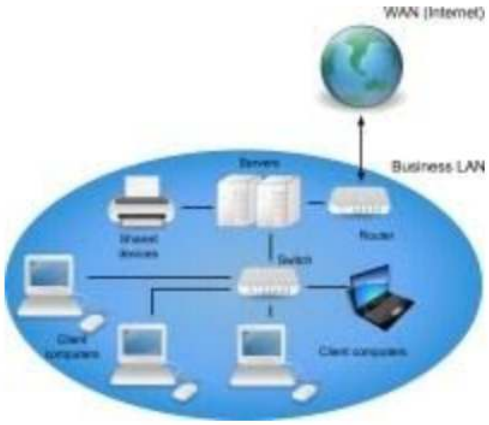


Figure 5.6.1: Lan-wan Networks. Image by Stuart Gray is licensed CC BY-SA

The network framework contains three classes of network segments:

- Devices
- Media
- Services

Devices and media are the physical components, or equipment, of the network. Equipment is regularly the noticeable segment of the network stage, for example, a PC, switch, remote passageway, or the cabling used to associate the devices.

Administrations incorporate a significant number of the basic network applications individuals utilize each day, similar to email facilitating administrations and web facilitating administrations. Procedures give the usefulness that coordinates and moves the messages through the network. Procedures are more subtle to us yet are basic to the activity of networks.

End Devices

An end device is either the source or destination of a message transmitted over the network. Each end device is identified by an IP address and a physical address. Both addresses are needed to communicate over a network. IP addresses are unique logical IP addresses that are assigned to every device within a network. If a device moves from one network to another, then the IP address has to be modified.

Physical addresses, also known as MAC (Media Access Control) addresses, are unique addresses assigned by the device manufacturers. These addresses are permanently burned into the hardware.

Intermediary Network Devices

Some devices act as intermediaries between devices. They are called delegated devices. These delegate devices give availability and guarantee that information streams over the network.

Routers utilize the destination end device address, related to data about the network interconnections, to decide how messages should take through the network.

Network Media

A medium called network media carries the act of transport data. The medium gives the channel over which the message makes a trip from source to destination.

Present-day organizations basically utilize three sorts of media to interconnect devices and give the pathway over which information can be transmitted.

These media are:

- Metallic wires within cables (Copper) - information is encoded into electrical driving forces.
- Glass or plastic fibers (fiber optic cable) - information is encoded as beats of light.
- Wireless transmission - information is encoded utilizing frequencies from the electromagnetic range.

Various sorts of network media have various highlights and advantages. Not all network media have similar qualities, nor are they all appropriate for the same purpose.

Figure **5.6.2**: Network Cables. Image by blickpixel from Pixabay is licensed CC BY SA

Figure **5.6.3**: Fiber Optic Cable. Image by blickpixel from Pixabay is licensed CC BY SA

Bluetooth

While Bluetooth is not generally used to connect a device to the Internet, it is an important wireless technology that has enabled many functionalities that are used every day. When created in 1994 by Ericsson, it was intended to replace wired connections between devices. Today, it is the standard method for connecting nearby devices wirelessly. Bluetooth has a range of approximately 300 feet and consumes very little power, making it an excellent choice for various purposes.

Figure **5.6.4**: Bluetooth combo wordmark 2011. Image by House is licensed under Public Domain

Some applications of Bluetooth include: connecting a printer to a personal computer, connecting a mobile phone and headset, connecting a wireless keyboard and mouse to a computer, and connecting a remote for a presentation made on a personal computer.

This page titled 5.6: LANs, WANs, and the Internet is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **5.6: LANs, WANs, and the Internet** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

5.7: Network Representations

To draw a diagram of a network, symbols are utilized by network professionals to represent the different devices and connections which make up a network.

A diagram gives a simple method to see how devices in a huge network are associated. This kind of "picture" of a network is known as a topology diagram. The capacity to perceive the legitimate portrayals of the physical systems administration segments is basic to have the option to imagine the association and activity of a network.

Notwithstanding these portrayals, particular phrasing is utilized while discussing how every one of these devices and media interfaces with one another. Significant terms to recall are:

- **Network Interface Card**: A NIC or LAN connector gives the physical association with the PC or opposite end device's network. The media that are associating the PC to the network administration device plug legitimately into the NIC.
- **Physical Port**: A connector or outlet on a network administration device where the media is associated with an end device or another network administration device.
- **Interface**: Specialized ports on a network administration device that associate with singular networks. Since switches are utilized to interconnect networks, the ports on a network allude to network interfaces.

Topology Diagrams

Understanding topology diagrams are required for anybody working with a network. They give a visual guide of how the network is associated.

There are two sorts of Topology diagrams:

- Physical topology and Logical topology diagrams. The physical topology diagrams identify the physical location of intermediary devices and cable installation.
- The Logical topology diagrams identify devices, addressing schemes, and ports.

With physical topology, it is quite self-explanatory. It is how they are interconnected with cables and wires physically. The logical topology is how connected devices are seen to the user.

Types of Networks

Networks foundations can fluctuate extraordinarily regarding:

- Size of the territory secured
- Number of users connected
- Number and kinds of administrations accessible
- Territory of obligation

The two most normal sorts of system frameworks:

- **Local Area Network (LAN)**: A network framework that gives access to clients and end devices in a little topographical zone, commonly an enterprise, small business, home, or small business network possessed and oversaw by an individual or IT department.
- **Wide Area Network (WAN)**: A network foundation that gives access to different networks over a wide topographical region, commonly possessed and overseen by a broadcast communications specialist co-op.

Different kinds of networks include:

- **Metropolitan Area Network (MAN)**: A network foundation that traverses a physical region bigger than a LAN yet littler than a WAN (e.g., a city). Keep an eye on are ordinarily worked by a solitary substance, for example, a huge association.
- **Wireless LAN (WLAN)**: Like a LAN, it remotely interconnects clients and focuses on a little geological region.
- **Storage Area Network (SAN)**: A network foundation intended to help record servers and give information stockpiling, recovery, and replication.

Local Area Networks

LANs are a network foundation that traverses a little topographical territory. Explicit highlights of LANs include:

- LANs interconnect end devices in a restricted region, for example, a home, school, place of business, or grounds.
- A solitary association or person normally directs a LAN. The managerial control that oversees the security and access control arrangements is upheld on the network level.
- LANs give rapid data transfer capacity to inward end gadgets and delegate devices.

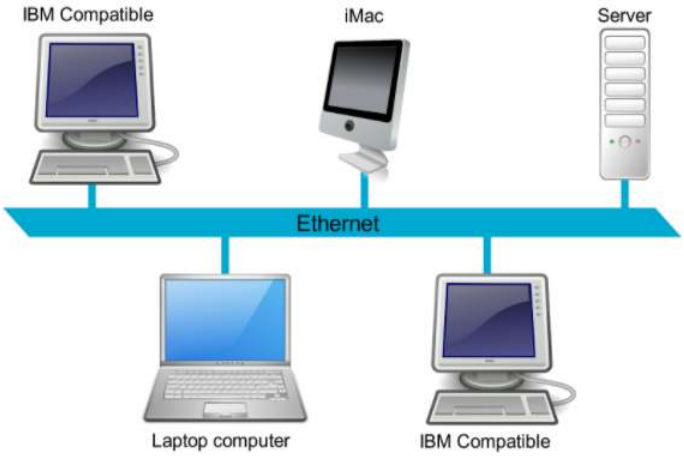


Figure 5.7.1: Local Area Network. Image by T.seppelt, derivative work from File:Ethernet.png, including content of the Open Clip Art Library, by © 2007 Nuno Pinheiro & David Vignoni & David Miller & Johann Ollivier Lapeyre & Kenneth Wimer & Riccardo Iaconelli / KDE / LGPL 3, User:George Shuklin and the Tango Project! is licensed CC BY-SA

Wide Area Networks

WANs are a network foundation that traverses a wide topographical zone. WANs are ordinarily overseen by specialist organizations (SP) or Internet Service Providers (ISP).

Explicit highlights of WANs include:

- WANs interconnect LANs over wide geological zones, for example, between urban areas, states, territories, nations, or the mainland.
- Numerous specialist organizations typically manage WANs.
- WANs ordinarily give more slow speed joins between LANs

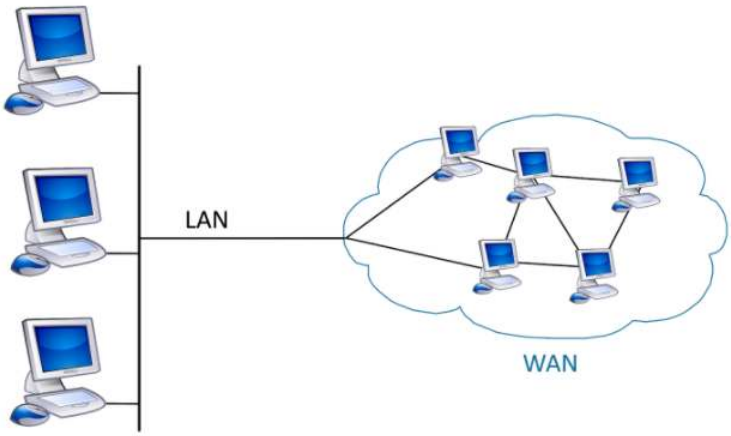


Figure 5.7.2: *LAN WAN scheme. Image by Gateway_firewall.svg: Harald Mühlböck derivative work: Ggia is licensed CC BY-SA*

This page titled 5.7: Network Representations is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **5.7: Network Representations** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

5.8: The Internet, Intranets, and Extranets

The Internet

The Internet is an overall assortment of interconnected networks (internetworks or web for short).

A portion of the LAN models is associated with one another through a WAN association. WANs are then associated with one another. The WAN association lines speak to all the assortments of ways we interface networks. WANs can connect through copper wires, fiber optic cables, and wireless transmissions.

No individual or group doesn't own the Internet. Guaranteeing compelling correspondence over this various framework requires the use of steady and generally perceived advances and norms, just as the collaboration of many network organization offices. Some associations have been produced to keep up the structure and normalization of Internet conventions and procedures. These organizations incorporate the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF), Internet Corporation for Assigned Names and Numbers (ICANN), and the Internet Architecture Board (IAB), in addition to numerous others.

Have you ever wondered how your smartphone can function the way it does? Have you ever wondered how you can search for information on the web and find it within milliseconds? The world's largest implementation of client/server computing and internetworking is the Internet.

The world's largest implementation of client/server computing and internetworking is the Internet. The internet is also a system, which is the most extensive public way of communicating. The internet began in the 20th century; it initially started as a network for the U.S Department of Defense to globally connect university professors and scientists. Most small businesses and homes have access to the internet by subscribing to an internet service provider (ISP), a commercial organization with a permanent connection to the internet, which sells temporary connections to retail subscribers. For example, AT&T, NetZero, and T-Mobile. A DSL (Digital subscriber line) operates over existing telephone lines to carry data, voice, and video transmission rates. The base of the internet is TCP/IP networking protocol suite. When two users on the internet exchange messages, each message is decomposed into packets using the TCP/IP protocol.

Have you ever wondered what happens when you type a URL in the browser and press enter? The browser checks a DNS record in the cache to find the corresponding IP address to the domain. First, you type in a specific URL into your browser. The browser then checks the cache for a DNS record to find the website's corresponding IP address. If the URL is not in the cache, ISP's (Internet Service Provider)'s DNS server starts a DNS query to find the server's IP address that hosts the website. The browser then starts a TCP connection with the server. Then, the browser sends an HTTP request to the webserver. After that, the server handles the request and sends an HTTP response back. Finally, the browser shows the HTML content. For example, www.Wikipedia.org/ has an IP address, that specific IP address could be searched starting with http:// on a browser/ The DNS contains a list of URLs, including their IP addresses.

The DNS (Domain Name System) changes domain names into IP addresses. The domain name is the English name of the thing, and that has 32-bits which are unique and numeric to that English name. To access a computer on the internet, they only need to specify the domain name.

Intranets and Extranets

There are two different terms which are like the term Internet: Intranets and Extranets.

Intranet is a term frequently used to describe a private association of LANs and WANs that has a place with an association. It is intended to be available only for approved individuals, workers, or others of an organization.

An extranet is a term used to describe the case when an organization wants to give secure and safe access to people who work for another organization yet expect access to the association's information. Examples of extranets include:

- An organization that is giving access to outside providers and temporary workers.
- An emergency clinic gives a booking system to specialists so they can make arrangements for their patients.
- A nearby office of training gives spending plans and staff data to the schools in its region.

This page titled 5.8: The Internet, Intranets, and Extranets is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **5.8: The Internet, Intranets, and Extranets** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

5.9: Internet Connections

Internet Access Technologies

There is a wide range of approaches to associate users and associations with the Internet.

Home clients (telecommuters) and workplaces regularly require an association with an Internet Service Provider (ISP) to access the Internet. Association alternatives change significantly among ISP and topographical areas. Notwithstanding, companies incorporate a broadband link, broadband computerized endorser line (DSL), remote WANs, and versatile administrations.

Associations commonly expect access to other corporate destinations and the Internet. Quick associations are required to help business administrations, including IP telephones, video conferencing, and server farm stockpiling.

Business-class interconnections are normally given by specialist organizations (SP). Well-known business-class administrations incorporate business DSL, rented lines, and Metro Ethernet.

Home and Small Office Internet Connections

Regular connection choices for little office and home office users:

- **Cable**: Typically offered by digital TV specialist co-ops, the Internet information signal is carried on a similar link that conveys satellite TV. It gives a high transmission capacity, consistently on, association with the Internet.
- **DSL**: Digital Subscriber Lines gives a high data transmission, consistently on, association with the Internet. DSL runs over a phone line when all is said in done, small office and home office clients associate utilizing Asymmetrical DSL (ADSL), which implies that the download speed is quicker than the upload speed.
- **Cellular**: For a Cell phone network to connect, it utilizes cellular internet access. Any place you can get a phone signal, you can get cell Internet. Execution will be restricted by the telephone's abilities and the cell tower to which it is associated. The fourth generation of broadband cellular network technology is 4G, which most people are familiar with because it is on smartphones. 5G is upcoming and expected to be faster than and succeed 4G by 100 times, which will have the ability to transmit a lot more data at a much faster pace than 4G.
- **Satellite**: Internet access through satellite is a genuine advantage in those territories that would somehow or another have no Internet availability by any means. Satellite dishes require a clear line of sight to the satellite.
- **Dial-up telephone**: An economical choice that utilizes any telephone line and a modem. The low transmission capacity supported by a dial-up modem association is normally not adequate for huge information transfer. However, it is still a valuable choice wherever other options are not available such as in rural areas or remote locations where phones are the only means of communication.

Fiber optic links are increasingly becoming more available to home and small businesses. This empowers an ISP to give higher data transmission speeds and bolster more administrations, for example, Internet, telephone, and TV.

Business Internet Connections

Corporate connection choices contrast from home client alternatives. Organizations may require higher transmission capacity, devoted data transmission, and oversaw administrations. Business connection options include:

- **Dedicated Leased Line**: Leased lines are really saved circuits inside the specialist organization's system that interface geologically isolated workplaces for private voice or potentially information organizing. The circuits are ordinarily leased at a month-to-month or yearly rate. They can be costly.
- **Ethernet WAN**: Ethernet WANs broaden LAN access into the WAN. Ethernet is a LAN innovation you will find out about in a later section. The advantages of Ethernet are currently being reached out into the WAN.
- **DSL**: Business DSL is accessible in different organizations. A famous decision is Symmetric Digital Subscriber Lines (SDSL) which is like the purchaser rendition of DSL. However, it gives transfers and downloads at similar paces.
- **Satellite**: Like small office and home office clients, satellite help can give an association when a wired arrangement isn't accessible.

The decision of connection shifts relying upon topographical area and specialist organization accessibility.

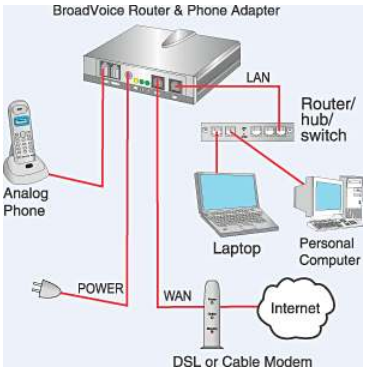


Figure 5.9.1: Devices connection. Image by BroadVoice is licensed CC BY 1.0

Sidebar: An Internet Vocabulary Lesson

Networking communication is full of some very technical concepts based on some simple principles. Learn the terms below, and you will be able to hold your own in a conversation about the Internet.

- **Packet**: The fundamental unit of data transmitted over the Internet. When a device intends to send a message to another device (for example, your PC sends a request to YouTube to open a video), it breaks the message down into smaller pieces, called packets. Each packet has the sender's address, the destination address, a sequence number, and a piece of the overall message to be sent.
- **Hub**: A simple network device connects other devices to the network and sends packets to all the devices connected to it.
- **Bridge**: A network device that connects two networks and only allows packets through that are needed.
- **Switch**: A network device that connects multiple devices and filters packets based on their destination within the connected devices.
- **Router**: A device that receives and analyzes packets and then routes them towards their destination. In some cases, a router will send a packet to another router; it will send it directly to its destination in other cases.
- **IP Addres**s: Every device that communicates on the Internet, whether it be a personal computer, a tablet, a smartphone, or anything else, is assigned a unique identifying number called an IP (Internet Protocol) address. Historically, the IP-address standard used has been IPv4 (version 4), which has the format of four numbers between 0 and 255 separated by a period. For example, the domain Saylor.org has an IP address of 107.23.196.166. The IPv4 standard has a limit of 4,294,967,296 possible addresses. As the use of the Internet has proliferated, the number of IP addresses needed has grown to the point where IPv4 addresses will be exhausted. This has led to the new IPv6 standard, which is currently being phased in. The IPv6 standard is formatted as eight groups of four hexadecimal digits, such as 2001:0db8:85a3:0042:1000:8a2e:0370:7334. The IPv6 standard has a limit of 3.4×1038 possible addresses. For more detail about the new IPv6 standard, see this Wikipedia article.
- **Domain name**: If you had to try to remember the IP address of every web server you wanted to access, the Internet would not be nearly as easy to use. A domain name is a human-friendly name for a device on the Internet. These names generally consist of a descriptive text followed by the top-level domain (TLD). For example, Wikipedia's domain name is Wikipedia.org; Wikipedia describes the organization, and .org is the top-level domain. In this case, the .org TLD is designed for nonprofit organizations. Other well-known TLDs include .com , .net , and .gov . For a complete list and description of domain names, see this Wikipedia article.
- **DNS**: DNS stands for "domain name system," which acts as the directory on the Internet. A DNS server is queried when a request to access a device with a domain name is given. It returns the IP address of the device requested, allowing for proper routing.
- **Packet-switching**: When a packet is sent from one device out over the Internet, it does not follow a straight path to its destination. Instead, it is passed from one router to another across the Internet until it reaches its destination. In fact, sometimes, two packets from the same message will take different routes! Sometimes, packets will arrive at their destination out of order. When this happens, the receiving device restores them to their proper order. For more details on packet switching, see this interactive web page.

- **Protocol**: In computer networking, a protocol is the set of rules that allow two (or more) devices to exchange information back and forth across the network.

This page titled 5.9: Internet Connections is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **5.9: Internet Connections** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

5.10: The Network as a Platform Converged Networks

Traditional Separate Networks

Consider a school which was built thirty years ago. A few study halls were cabled for the data network, phone network, and video network for TVs in those days and these different networks couldn't speak with one another.

Each network utilized various innovations to convey the correspondence signal. Each network had its own arrangement of rules and measures to guarantee successful correspondence.

The Converging Network

Today, the separate data, phone, and video networks are converging. In contrast to traditional networks, merged networks are equipped for conveying information, voice, and video between a wide range of sorts of devices over a similar system foundation.

This network foundation utilizes a similar arrangement of rules, understandings, and implementation standards.

This page titled 5.10: The Network as a Platform Converged Networks is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **5.10: The Network as a Platform Converged Networks** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

5.11: Reliable Network

Network Architecture

Networks must help a wide scope of applications and services, just as they work over a wide range of cables and devices, making up the physical infrastructure. In this specific situation, the term network architecture alludes to the technologies that help the foundation and the programmed services and rules, or protocols, that move data over the network.

As networks advance, we are finding that there are four fundamental qualities that the underlying architectures need to deliver to meet users desires:

- Fault Tolerance
- Scalability
- Quality of Service (QoS)
- Security

Fault Tolerance

The desire is that the Internet is consistently accessible to a great many clients who depend on it. This requires a network architecture that is worked to tolerate flaws. A fault-tolerant network restrains the effect of failure, with the goal that the least number of devices are influenced. It is additionally worked in a manner that permits brisk recuperation when such a disappointment happens. These networks rely upon various ways between the source and goal of a message. If a path fails, the messages can be instantly sent over an alternate link. Having numerous ways to a goal is known as redundancy.

One way dependable networks give repetition is by executing a packet-switched network. Packet switching parts traffic into packets that are steered over a shared network. For example, a solitary message, an email, or a video stream, is broken into multiple message blocks, called packets. Every packet has the important addressing information of the source and goal of the message. The routers inside the network switch the packets dependent on the state of the network at that point. This implies all the packets in a solitary message could take totally different ways to the goal.

Scalability

A scalable network can grow rapidly to help new users and applications without affecting the service's performance being conveyed to existing users.

Another network can be effortlessly added to a current network. Furthermore, networks are versatile because the designers observe acknowledged protocols and standards. This permits software and hardware vendors to improve items and administrations without stressing over structuring another arrangement of rules for working inside the network.

Quality of Service

Quality of Service (QoS) is additionally a consistently expanding requirement of networks today. New applications accessible to users over internetworks, for example, voice and live video transmissions, make better standards for the quality of the delivered services. Have you at any point attempted to watch a video with steady breaks and stops? As information, voice, and video content keep on combining into a similar system, QoS turns into an essential instrument for overseeing blockage and guaranteeing dependable conveyance of substance to all users.

Congestion happens when the interest for bandwidth surpasses the amount which is accessible. Network bandwidth is estimated in the number of bits transmitted in a solitary second or bits per second (bps). When synchronous correspondences have endeavored over the network, the interest for network bandwidth can surpass its accessibility, making network congestion.

When traffic volume is more prominent than what can be shipped over the network, devices queue or hold the packets in memory until assets become accessible to transmit them.

With a QoS strategy set up, the router can deal with data and voice traffic progression, offering priority to voice communications if the network encounters congestion.

Security

Vital individual and business resources are the network infrastructure, services, and the data contained on network-attached devices.

Two kinds of network security worries must be addressed: network infrastructure security and information security.

Ensuring a network infrastructure incorporates the physical securing of devices that give network connectivity and forestalling unapproved access to the management software that resides on them.

Data security ensures that the data contained inside the packets being transmitted over the network and the data put away on network-attached devices. To accomplish the objectives of network security, there are three essential requirements:

- Confidentiality: Data secrecy implies that just the planned and approved recipients can access and read information.
- Integrity: Data honesty affirms that the data has not been adjusted in transmission, from root to goal.
- Availability- Data accessibility implies confirmation of timely and solid access to information services for approved users.

This page titled 5.11: Reliable Network is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **5.11: Reliable Network** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

5.12: The Changing Network Environment Network Trends

New Trends

As new technologies and end-user devices come to market, businesses and purchasers must keep on acclimating to this ever-evolving condition. The job of the network is changing to empower the connections between individuals, devices, and data. There are a few new networking trends that will impact organizations and purchasers. A portion of the top trends include:

- Bring Your Own Device (BYOD)
- Video communications
- Online collaboration
- Cloud computing

Bring Your Own Device

The idea of any device, to any content, in any way, is a significant worldwide trend that requires huge changes to the manner in which devices are utilized. This trend is known as Bring Your Own Device (BYOD).

BYOD is about end users having the opportunity to utilize individual tools in order to get to data and convey over a business or campus network. With the development of customer devices and the related drop in cost, representatives and students can be relied upon to have probably the most progressive computing and networking tools for individual use. These individual tools can be laptops, e-books, tablets, cell phones, and tablets. These can be devices bought by the organization or school, bought by the individual, or both.

BYOD implies any device, with any possession, utilized anyplace. For instance, previously, a student who expected to get access to the campus network or the Internet needed to utilize one of the school's PCs. These devices were commonly constrained and seen as instruments just for work done in the study hall or in the library. Expanded availability through portable and remote access to the campus network gives students a lot of adaptability and opens doors of learning for the student.

Online Collaboration

People want to connect with the network, for access to data applications, in addition to team up with each other.

Collaboration is characterized as "the demonstration of working with another or others on a joint venture." Collaboration tools, give representatives, students, instructors, clients, and accomplices an approach to quickly interface, connect, and accomplish their targets.

For businesses, collaboration is a basic and vital need that associations are utilizing to sustain their competition. Collaboration is additionally a need in training. Students need to work together to help each other in learning, to create group abilities utilized in the workplace, and to cooperate on group based projects.

Video Communication

Another trend in networking that is basic to the correspondence and joint effort exertion is video. Video is being utilized for interchanges, cooperation, and amusement. Video calls can be made to and from anyplace with an Internet connection.

Figure 5.12.1: A video call showing a group of people on the screen. Image by photo by Chris Montgomery on Unsplash is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0

Video conferencing is an incredible asset for speaking with others from a distance, both locally and worldwide. Video is turning into a basic necessity for successful joint effort as associations stretch out across geographic and social limits.

Cloud Computing

Cloud computing is another worldwide trend changing how we access and store information. Cloud computing permits us to store individual files, even backup our whole hard disk drive on servers over the Internet. Applications, for example, word processing, and photograph editing, can be accessed utilizing the Cloud.

When it comes to businesses, cloud computing expands IT's capabilities without requiring interest in new infrastructure, preparing new faculty, or permitting new software. These services are accessible on request and conveyed economically to any device on the planet without trading off security or capacity.

There are four essential Clouds: Public Clouds, Private Clouds, Hybrid Clouds, and Custom Clouds. Snap each Cloud to find out additional.

Cloud computing is conceivable because of data centers. A data center is an office used to house PC frameworks and related parts. A data center can consume one room of a building, at least one story, or the whole thing. Data centers are commonly over the top expensive to manufacture and keep up. Therefore, just huge associations utilize secretly fabricated data centers to house their information and offer users assistance. Smaller associations that can't afford to keep up their own private data center can lessen the general expense of ownership by renting server and capacity services from a bigger data center association in the Cloud.

This page titled 5.12: The Changing Network Environment Network Trends is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **5.12: The Changing Network Environment Network Trends** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

5.13: Technology Trends in the Home

Networking trends are not just influencing how we work or study, and they are also changing pretty much every part of the home.

The most up-to-date home trends incorporate smart home technology, a technology that is coordinated into habitual appliances, permitting them to interconnect with different devices, making them progressively 'smart' or automated. For instance, envision having the option to set up a dish and spot it in the broiler for cooking before going out for the afternoon. Envision if the stove knew of the dish it was cooking and was associated with your 'schedule of occasions' so it could figure out what time you will be eating and change start times and length of cooking accordingly. It could even modify cooking times and temperatures dependent on plan changes. Furthermore, a cell phone or tablet connection permits the user to interface with the broiler straightforwardly to make any ideal changes. When the dish is "accessible," the stove sends an alarm message to a predefined end-user device that the dish is done and warming.

This situation isn't long-off. Actually, smart home technology is being created for all rooms inside a house. It will turn out to be a greater degree of reality as home networking and high-speed Internet technology become progressively far-reaching. New home networking technologies are being grown day by day to meet these sorts of developing technology needs.

Powerline Networking

Powerline networking is a rising trend for home networking that utilizes existing electrical wiring to connect devices.

The idea of "no new wires" signifies the capacity to connect a device to the network where there is an electrical outlet. This spares the expense of introducing data cables and with no extra expense to the electrical bill. Utilizing similar wiring that conveys power, powerline networking sends information by sending data on specific frequencies.

Utilizing a standard powerline adapter, devices can connect with the LAN any place there is an electrical outlet. Powerline networking is beneficial when wireless access points can't be utilized or can't arrive at all to the devices in the home. Powerline networking isn't intended to fill in for committed cabling in data networks. But it is an alternative when data network cables or wireless communications are not a reasonable choice.

Wireless Broadband

Connecting with the Internet is indispensable in savvy home innovation. DSL and cable are basic advances used to connect homes and private companies to the Internet. Nonetheless, remote access might be another choice in numerous regions.

Another remote answer for home and independent companies is wireless broadband. This uses the equivalent cell innovation to get to the Internet with an advanced mobile phone or tablet. A radio wire is introduced outside the house, giving either remote or wired availability for home devices. In numerous zones, home wireless broadband is contending legitimately with DSL and cable services.

Wireless Internet Service Provider (WISP)

Wireless Internet Service Provider (WISP) is an ISP that connects subscribers of an assigned passage or problem area utilizing comparable remote innovations found in-home wireless local area networks (WLANs). WISPs are all the more usually found in provincial situations where DSL or cable services are not accessible.

Though a different transmission tower might be introduced for the antenna, the antenna is usually connected to a current raised structure, such as a water tower or a radio pinnacle. A little dish or radio wire is introduced on the subscriber's rooftop in the WISP transmitter's scope. The subscriber's entrance unit is associated with the wired system inside the home. From the home user's point of view, the arrangement isn't vastly different from DSL or cable service. The principle distinction is that the home's connection to the ISP is remote rather than a physical link.

Sidebar: Why Doesn’t My Cell Phone Work When I Travel Abroad?

As mobile phone technologies have evolved, providers in different countries have chosen different communication standards for their mobile phone networks. In the US, both of the two competing standards exist GSM (used by AT&T and T-Mobile) and

CDMA (used by the other major carriers). Each standard has its pros and cons, but the bottom line is that phones using one standard cannot easily switch to the other.

In the US, this is not a big deal because mobile networks exist to support both standards. But when you travel to other countries, you will find that most of them use GSM networks, with the one big exception being Japan, which has standardized on CDMA. It is possible for a mobile phone using one type of network to switch to the other type of network by switching out the SIM card, which controls your access to the mobile network. However, this will not work in all cases. If you are traveling abroad, it is always best to consult with your mobile provider to determine the best way to access a mobile network.

This page titled 5.13: Technology Trends in the Home is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **5.13: Technology Trends in the Home** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

5.14: Network Security

Security Threats

Network security is an indispensable piece of computer networking today, whether or not the network is restricted to a home domain with a solitary connection with the Internet or as extensive as an organization with many users. The network security that is executed must consider the environment, just as the system's devices and prerequisites. It must have the option to keep the data secure while considering the quality of service anticipated from the network.

Ensuring a network is secure includes technologies, protocols, devices, tools, and techniques to keep data secure and moderate threat vectors. Threat vectors might be external or internal. Numerous external network security threats today are spread over the Internet.

The most widely recognized external threats to networks include:

- Viruses, worms, and Trojan horses- malignant programming and subjective code running on a client device
- Spyware and adware - software installed on a user device that covertly gathers data about the user Zero-day attacks, likewise called zero-hour attacks - an assault that happens on a principal day that a defenselessness gets known
- Hacker attacks- an assault by an educated individual to user devices or network assets
- Denial of service attacks- assaults intended to slow or crash applications and procedures on a network device
- Data interception and theft - an assault to catch private data from an association's network
- Identity theft- an assault to take the login qualifications of a user to get to private information

It is similarly critical to think about internal threats. There have been numerous examinations showing that the most well-known data breaches happen due to the network's internal users. This can be credited to lost or taken devices, inadvertent abuse by workers, and in the business condition, even malignant representatives. With the advancing BYOD systems, corporate information is considerably more powerless. Accordingly, it is critical to address both outside and interior security dangers when building up a security strategy.

Security Solutions

No single arrangement can shield the network from the many threats that exist. Consequently, security ought to be implemented in various layers, utilizing more than one security arrangement. If one part of the security fails to recognize and shield the network, others will stand.

A home network security execution is typically rather essential. It is commonly executed on the interfacing end devices, just as connected with the Internet, and can even depend on contracted services from the ISP.

Conversely, the network security implementation for a corporate network, for the most part, comprises numerous segments incorporated with the network to screen and channel traffic.

In a perfect world, all segments cooperate, which limits maintenance and improves overall security.

Network security parts for a home or little office network should at least incorporate the following:

- Antivirus and antispyware: These are utilized to shield end devices from getting contaminated with vindictive software.
- Firewall filtering: This is utilized to prevent unapproved access to the network. This may incorporate a host-based firewall system that is actualized to forestall unapproved access to the end device or an essential separating service on the home router to keep unapproved access from the outside world into the network.

Bigger networks and corporate networks frequently have other security necessities:

- Dedicated firewall systems: These are utilized to develop further firewall abilities that can channel a lot of traffic with greater granularity.
- Access control lists (ACL): These are utilized to channel access and traffic sending additionally.
- Intrusion prevention systems (IPS): These are utilized to distinguish quick-spreading dangers, for example, zero-day or zero-hour assaults.
- Virtual Private Networks (VPN): These are utilized to give secure access to telecommuters.

Networks security necessities must consider the network condition, just like the different applications and processing prerequisites. Both home situations and organizations must have the option to secure their data yet consider the quality of service that is anticipated from every innovation. Furthermore, the security arrangement executed must be versatile to the developing and changing trends of the network.

The study of network security dangers and relief strategies begins with a concise understanding of the underlying switching and routing infrastructure utilized to organize network services.

This page titled 5.14: Network Security is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **5.14: Network Security** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

5.15: Summary

Summary

Networks and the Internet have changed how we impart, learn, work, and even play.

Networks come in all sizes. They can run from basic networks consisting of two PCs to networks connecting a large number of devices.

The Internet is the biggest network presently. Truth be told, the term Internet implies a 'network of networks.'

The Internet offers the types of assistance that empower us to interface and speak with our families, companions, work, and interests.

The network foundation is the stage that underpins the network. It gives the steady and dependable channel over which correspondence can happen. It comprises network parts, including end devices, halfway devices, and network media.

Networks must be dependable. This implies the network must be tolerant to flaws, adaptable, give quality of service, and guarantee the network's data and assets. Network security is a basic piece of PC networking, whether or not the network is restricted to a home situation with a solitary connection with the Internet or as extensive as an enterprise with many users. No single arrangement can shield the network from the assortment of dangers that exist. Consequently, security ought to be executed in numerous layers, utilizing more than one security arrangement.

The network infrastructure can change significantly based on size, many users, and the sorts of upheld administrations. The network infrastructure must develop and change by how the network is utilized. The routing and switching stage is the establishment of any networked framework.

This page titled 5.15: Summary is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **5.15: Summary** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

5.16: Study Questions

Study Questions

1. Identify the first four locations hooked up to the ARPANET
2. Describe the difference between the Internet and the World Wide Web
3. List three of your favorite Web 2.0 apps or websites
4. Identify the killer app for the Internet
5. List a few home internet connections
6. List a few business internet connections
7. Describe the difference between a LAN and a WAN
8. Describe the difference between an intranet and an extranet
9. Explain what a network topology is
10. Explain what powerline networking is

Exercises

1. Give an example of each of the following terms:

- Wireless LAN (WLAN)
- Wide-area network (WAN)
- Intranet
- Local-area network (LAN)
- Extranet

2. Give an example for each of the following:

- Fault tolerance
- Scalability
- Quality of service (QoS)
- Security

3. Create a google account at - google.com, create a new document using google docs, share the document with others and explore document sharing via your google account.
4. Find the IP address of your computer. Explain the steps how you find it.
5. Identify your or your school's Internet service provider.
6. Pretend that you are planning a trip to three foreign countries in the next month. Consult your wireless carrier to determine if your mobile phone would work properly in those countries. Identify if there are costs and other alternatives to have your phone work properly.

This page titled 5.16: Study Questions is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **5.16: Study Questions** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

6: Information Systems Security

Learning Objectives

Upon completion of this chapter, you will be able to:

- Identify the information security triad
- Explain the motivations of the threat actors
- Define the potential impact of network security attacks
- Describe the functions of a Security Operations Center (SOC)
- Explain security policies

We discuss the information security triad of confidentiality, integrity, and availability. We will review different types of threats and associated costs for individuals, organizations, and nations. We will discuss different security tools and technologies, how security operation centers can secure organizations' resources and assets, and a primer on personal information security.

6.1: Introduction
6.2: The Information Security Triad- Confidentiality, Integrity, Availability (CIA)
6.3: Tools for Information Security
6.4: Threat Impact
6.5: Fighters in the War Against Cybercrime- The Modern Security Operations Center
6.6: Security vs. Availability
6.7: Summary
6.8: Study Questions

This page titled 6: Information Systems Security is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

6.1: Introduction

As computers and other digital devices have become essential to business and commerce, they have also increasingly become a target for attacks. For a company or an individual to use a computing device with confidence, they must first be assured that the device is not compromised in any way and that all communications will be secure. This chapter reviews the fundamental concepts of information systems security and discusses some of the measures that can be taken to mitigate security threats. The chapter begins with an overview focusing on how organizations can stay secure. Several different measures that a company can take to improve security will be discussed. Finally, you will review a list of security precautions that individuals can take to secure their personal computing environment.

This page titled 6.1: Introduction is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **6.1: Introduction** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

6.2: The Information Security Triad- Confidentiality, Integrity, Availability (CIA)

The Information Security Triad: Confidentiality, Integrity, Availability (CIA)

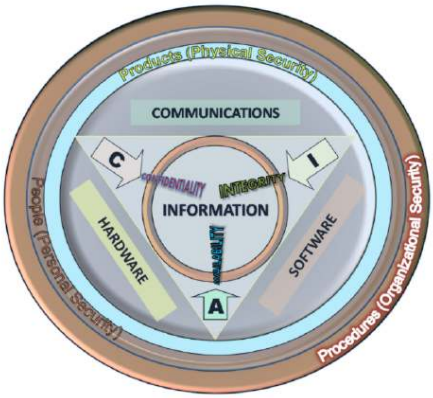


Figure **6.2.1**: The Information Security triad: CIA. Image by John M. Kennedy T., is licensed under CC BY-SA

Confidentiality

Protecting information means you want to restrict access to those who are allowed to see it. This is sometimes referred to as NTK, Need to Know, and everyone else should be disallowed from learning anything about its contents. This is the essence of confidentiality. For example, federal law requires that universities restrict access to private student information. Access to grade records should be limited to those who have authorized access.

Integrity

Integrity is the assurance that the information being accessed has not been altered and truly represents what is intended. Just as people with integrity mean what they say and can be trusted to represent the truth consistently, information integrity means information truly represents its intended meaning. Information can lose its integrity through malicious intent, such as when someone who is not authorized makes a change to misrepresent something intentionally. An example of this would be when a hacker is hired to go into the university's system and change a student's grade.

Integrity can also be lost unintentionally, such as when a computer power surge corrupts a file or someone authorized to make a change accidentally deletes a file or enters incorrect information.

Availability

Information availability is the third part of the CIA triad. Availability means information can be accessed and modified by anyone authorized to do so in an appropriate time frame. Depending on the type of information, an appropriate timeframe can mean different things. For example, a stock trader needs information to be available immediately, while a salesperson may be happy to get sales numbers for the day in a report the next morning. Online retailers require their servers to be available twenty-four hours a day, seven days a week. Other companies may not suffer if their web servers are down for a few minutes once in a while.

You'll learn about who, what, and why of cyber-attacks in this chapter. Different people commit cybercrime for different purposes. Security Operations Centers are designed to fight cybercrime. Jobs in a Security Operations Center (SOC) can be obtained by earning certifications, seeking formal education, and using employment services to gain internship experience and job opportunities.

The Danger

In chapter 5, we discussed various security threats and possible solutions. Here are a few scenarios to illustrate how hackers trick users.

Hijacked People

Melanie stopped at her favorite coffee shop to grab her drink for the afternoon. She placed her order, paid the clerk, and waited to fulfill orders' backup while the baristas worked furiously. Melanie took her phone out, opened the wireless client, and linked to what she thought was the free wireless network for the coffee shop.

Sitting in the corner of the store, however, a hacker had just set up a free, wireless hotspot "rogue" posing as the wireless network of the coffee shop. The hacker hijacked her session when Melanie logged on to her bank's website and accessed her bank accounts.

Hijacked Companies

Jeremy, an employee of a large, publicly-held corporation's finance department, receives an email from his CEO with an enclosed file in Adobe's PDF format. The PDF regards earnings for the organization in the third quarter. Jeremy does not recall his department making the PDF. His interest is triggered, and he opens his attachment.

The same scenario plays out around the company as thousands of other workers are enticed to click on the attachment successfully. As the PDF opens, ransomware is mounted on the workers' computers, including Jeremy's, and the process of storing and encrypting corporate data begins. The attackers' target is financial gain, as they keep the company's ransom data until they get paid. The consequences for opening an attachment in a spam mail or from an unfamiliar address could be disastrous, as with Jeremy's case.

Targeted Nations

Some of today's malware is so sophisticated and expensive to create that security experts believe that it could be created only by a nation-state or group of nations. This malware can be designed to attack vulnerable infrastructures, such as the water network or electric grid.

This was the aim of the Stuxnet worm, infecting USB drives. The movie World War 3.0 Zero Days tells a story of a malicious computer worm called Stuxnet. Stuxnet has been developed to penetrate Programmable Logic Controllers (PLCs) from vendors-supported nuclear installations. The worm was transmitted into the PLCs from infected USB drives and ultimately damaged centrifuges at these nuclear installations.

Threat Actors

Threat actors include amateurs, hacktivists, organized crime groups, state-funded groups, and terrorist organizations. Threat actors are individuals or a group of individuals conducting cyber-attacks on another person or organization. Cyberattacks are intentional, malicious acts intended to harm another individual or organization. The major motivations behind cyberattacks are money, politics, competition, and hatred.

Known as script kiddies, amateurs have little or no skill. They often use existing tools or instructions to start attacks found on the Internet. Some are only curious, while others seek to show off their abilities by causing damage. While they use simple methods, the outcomes can often be catastrophic.

Hacktivists

A hacktivist can act independently or as a member of an organized group. Hacktivists are hackers who rage against many social and political ideas. Hacktivists openly demonstrate against organizations or governments by publishing articles and images, leaking classified information, and crippling web infrastructure through distributed denial of service (DDoS) attacks with illegal traffic. A denial of service (DoS) attack is one of the most powerful cyberattacks in which the attacker bombards the target with traffic requests that overwhelm the target server in an attempt to crash it. A distributed denial of service (DDoS) attack is a more sophisticated version of DoS in which a set of distributed computer systems attacks the target.

Financial Gain

The financial gain motivates much of the hacking activity that constantly threatens our security. Cyber Criminals are people who utilize technology for their own malicious intentions, such as stealing personal information to make a profit. Such cybercriminals want access to our bank accounts, personal data, and everything else they can use for cash flow generation.

Trade Secrets and Global Politics

In the past few years, several reports have been seen of nation-states hacking other nations or otherwise intervening with internal policies. National states are also keen to use cyberspace for industrial spying. Intellectual property theft can give a country a considerable advantage in international trade.

Defending against the consequences of state-sponsored cyberespionage and cyber warfare will continue to be a priority for cybersecurity professionals.

How Secure is the Internet of Things

The Internet of Things (IoT) is rapidly expanding all around us. The internet of things is a network of physical objects that collect and share data over the internet. We're now beginning to enjoy the IoT rewards. There is a constant creation of new ways of using connected things. The IoT helps people link items so they can enhance their quality of life. Smart security systems, smart kitchen appliances, smartwatches, and smart heating systems are few examples of the IoT products available today.

For starters, many people now use connected wearable devices to monitor their fitness activities. How many devices do you currently own that link to the Internet or your home network?

How safe are those devices? For instance, who wrote the software to support the embedded hardware (aka firmware)? Has the programmer been paying attention to the security flaws? Are your home thermostats connected to the internet? Your Electronic Video Recorder (DVR)? When there are security bugs, can the firmware be patched in the system to fix the vulnerability? The new firmware will not update many computers on the Internet. For updating with patches, some older devices were not even developed. These two conditions put the users of such devices to face threats and security risks.

Reference

World War 3 Zero Days (Official Movie Site) - Own It on DVD or Digital HD. Retrieved September 6, 2020, from www.zerodaysfilm.com

---

This page titled 6.2: The Information Security Triad- Confidentiality, Integrity, Availability (CIA) is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **6.2: The Information Security Triad- Confidentiality, Integrity, Availability (CIA)** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

6.3: Tools for Information Security

To ensure the confidentiality, integrity, and availability of information, organizations can choose from various tools. Each of these tools can be utilized as a part of an overall information-security policy, which will be discussed in the next section.

Authentication

The most common way to identify people is through physical appearance, but how do we identify someone sitting behind a computer screen or at the ATM? Tools for authentication are used to ensure that the person accessing the information is, indeed, who they present themselves to be.

Authentication can be accomplished by identifying someone through one or more of three factors: something they know, something they have, or something they are. For example, the most common form of authentication today is the user ID and password. In this case, the authentication is done by confirming something that the user knows (their ID and password). But this form of authentication is easy to compromise (see sidebar), and stronger forms of authentication are sometimes needed. Identifying someone only by something they have, such as a key or a card, can also be problematic. When that identifying token is lost or stolen, the identity can be easily stolen. The final factor, something you are, is much harder to compromise. This factor identifies a user through physical characteristics, such as an eye-scan or fingerprint. Identifying someone through their physical characteristics is called biometrics.

A more secure way to authenticate a user is to do multi-factor authentication. Combining two or more of the factors listed above makes it much more difficult for someone to misrepresent themselves. An example of this would be the use of an RSA SecurID token. The RSA device is something you have and will generate a new access code every sixty seconds. To log in to an information resource using the RSA device, you combine something you know, a four-digit PIN, with the device's code. The only way to properly authenticate is by both knowing the code and having the RSA device.

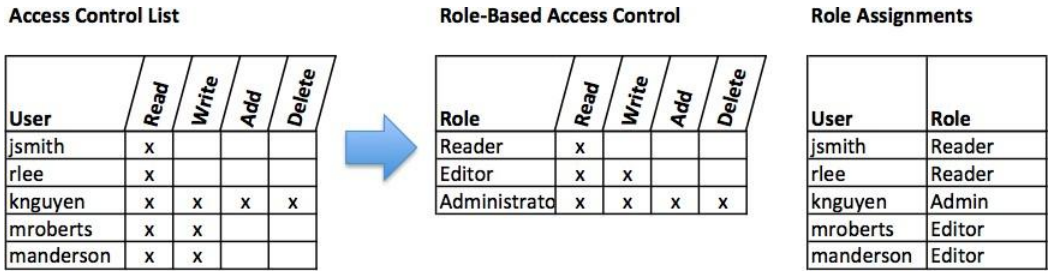
Figure **6.3.1**: An RSA SecurID SID800 token with USB connector. Image by Alexander Klink is licensed CC BY

Access Control

Once a user has been authenticated, the next step is to ensure that they can access the appropriate information resources. This is done through the use of access control. Access control determines which users are authorized to read, modify, add, and/or delete information. Several different access control models exist. Here we will discuss two: the access control list (ACL) and role-based access control (RBAC).

For each information resource that an organization wishes to manage, a list of users who have the ability to take specific actions can be created. This is an access control list or ACL. For each user, specific capabilities are assigned, such as reading, writing, deleting, or adding. Only users with those capabilities are allowed to perform those functions. If a user is not on the list, they have no ability even to know that the information resource exists.

ACLs are simple to understand and maintain. However, they have several drawbacks. The primary drawback is that each information resource is managed separately. If a security administrator wanted to add or remove a user to a large set of information resources, it would not be easy. And as the number of users and resources increases, ACLs become harder to maintain. This has led to an improved method of access control, called role-based access control, or RBAC. With RBAC, instead of giving specific users access rights to an information resource, users are assigned to roles, and then those roles are assigned access. This allows the administrators to manage users and roles separately, simplifying administration and, by extension, improving security.



Access Control List

User	Read	Write	Add	Delete
jsmith	x			
rlee	x			
knguyen	x	x	x	x
mroberts	x	x		
manderson	x	x		

Role-Based Access Control

Role	Read	Write	Add	Delete
Reader	x			
Editor	x	x		
Administrato	x	x	x	x

Role Assignments

User	Role
jsmith	Reader
rlee	Reader
knguyen	Admin
mroberts	Editor
manderson	Editor

Figure 6.3.2: Comparison of ACL and RBAC. Image by David Bourgeois is licensed CC BY 4.0

Encryption

An organization often needs to transmit information over the Internet or transfer it on external media such as a USB. In these cases, even with proper authentication and access control, an unauthorized person can access the data. Encryption is a process of encoding data upon its transmission or storage so that only authorized individuals can read it. This encoding is accomplished by a computer program, which encodes the plain text that needs to be transmitted; then, the recipient receives the ciphertext and decodes it (decryption). For this to work, the sender and receiver need to agree on the method of encoding so that both parties can communicate properly. Both parties share the encryption key, enabling them to encode and decode each other's messages. This is called symmetric key encryption. This type of encryption is problematic because the key is available in two different places.

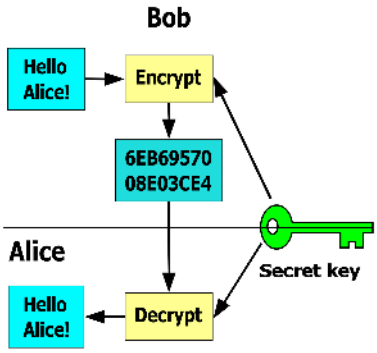


Figure 6.3.3: Symmetric/private key encryption. Image by Phayzfaustyn is licensed CC0 1.0

An alternative to symmetric key encryption is public-key encryption. In public-key encryption, two keys are used: a public key and a private key. To send an encrypted message, you obtain the public key, encode the message, and send it. The recipient then uses the private key to decode it. The public key can be given to anyone who wishes to send the recipient a message. Each user needs one private key and one public key to secure messages. The private key is necessary to decrypt something sent with the public key.

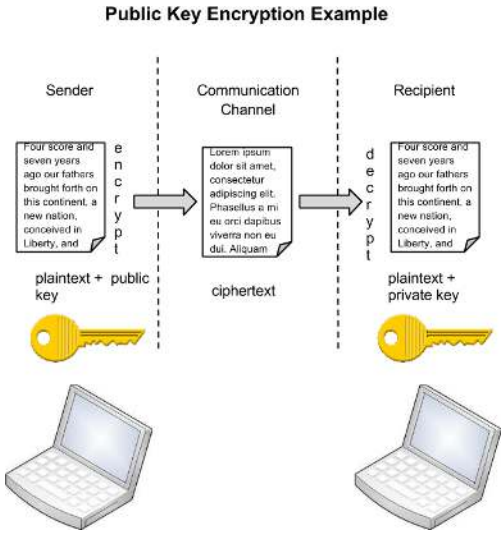


Figure 6.3.4: Public key encryption. Image by David Bourgeoi Ph.D. is licensed CC BY 4.0

Sidebar: Password Security

The security of a password depends on its strengths to guard against brute-force guesses. Strong passwords reduce overall breaches of security because it is harder for criminals to guess.

Password policies and technologies have evolved to combat security threats, from short to long passwords, from single-factor authentication to multi-factor authentications. Most companies now have specific requirements for users to create passwords and how they are authenticated.

Below are some of the more common policies that organizations should put in place.

- **Require complex passwords that make it hard to guess**. For example, a good password policy requires the use of a minimum of eight characters, and at least one upper-case letter, one special character, and one number.
- **Change passwords regularly**. Users must change their passwords regularly. Users should change their passwords every sixty to ninety days, ensuring that any passwords that might have been stolen or guessed will not be used against the company.
- **Train employees not to give away passwords**. One of the primary methods used to steal passwords is to figure them out by asking the users or administrators. Pretexting occurs when an attacker calls a helpdesk or security administrator and pretends to be a particular authorized user having trouble logging in. Then, by providing some personal information about the authorized user, the attacker convinces the security person to reset the password and tell him what it is. Another way that employees may be tricked into giving away passwords is through email phishing.
- **Train employees not to click on a link**. Phishing occurs when a user receives an email that looks as if it is from a trusted source, such as their bank or their employer. In the email, the user is asked to click a link and log in to a website that mimics the genuine website and enter their ID and password, which the attacker then captures.

Backups

Another essential tool for information security is a comprehensive backup plan for the entire organization. Not only should the data on the corporate servers be backed up, but individual computers used throughout the organization should also be backed up. A good backup plan should consist of several components.

- **A full understanding of the organizational information resources.** What information does the organization actually have? Where is it stored? Some data may be stored on the organization's servers, other data on users' hard drives, some in the cloud, and some on third-party sites. An organization should make a full inventory of all of the information that needs to be backed up and determine the best way to back it up.
- **Regular backups of all data**. The frequency of backups should be based on how important the data is to the company, combined with the company's ability to replace any data that is lost. Critical data should be backed up daily, while less critical data could be backed up weekly.
- **Offsite storage of backup data sets**. If all of the backup data is being stored in the same facility as the original copies of the data, then a single event, such as an earthquake, fire, or tornado, would take out both the original data and the backup! It is essential that part of the backup plan is to store the data in an offsite location.
- **Test of data restoration**. Regularly, the backups should be put to the test by having some of the data restored. This will ensure that the process is working and will give the organization confidence in the backup plan.

Besides these considerations, organizations should also examine their operations to determine what effect downtime would have on their business. If their information technology were to be unavailable for any sustained period of time, how would it impact the business?

Additional concepts related to backup include the following:

- **Universal Power Supply (UPS)**. A UPS is a device that provides battery backup to critical components of the system, allowing them to stay online longer and/or allowing the IT staff to shut them down using proper procedures to prevent the data loss that might occur from a power failure.
- **Alternate or "hot" sites.** Some organizations choose to have an alternate site where their critical data replica is always kept up to date. When the primary site goes down, the alternate site is immediately brought online to experience little or no downtime.

As information has become a strategic asset, a whole industry has sprung up around the technologies necessary for implementing a proper backup strategy. A company can contract with a service provider to back up all of their data or purchase large amounts of

online storage space and do it themselves. Most large businesses now use technologies such as storage area networks and archival systems.

Firewalls

Another method that an organization should use to increase security on its network is a firewall. A firewall can exist as hardware or software (or both). A hardware firewall is a device connected to the network and filters the packets based on a set of rules. A software firewall runs on the operating system and intercepts packets as they arrive at a computer. A firewall protects all company servers and computers by stopping packets from outside the organization's network that does not meet a strict set of criteria. A firewall may also be configured to restrict the flow of packets leaving the organization. This may be done to eliminate the possibility of employees watching YouTube videos or using Facebook from a company computer.

Some organizations may choose to implement multiple firewalls as part of their network security configuration, creating one or more sections of their partially secured network. This segment of the network is referred to as a DMZ, borrowing the term demilitarized zone from the military. It is where an organization may place resources that need broader access but still need to be secured.

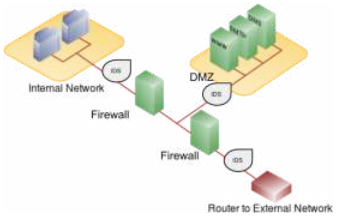


Figure 6.3.5: Network configuration with firewalls, IDS, and a DMZ. Image by David Bourgeois is licensed CC BY 4.0

Intrusion Detection Systems

Another device that can be placed on the network for security purposes is an intrusion detection system or IDS. An IDS does not add any additional security; instead, it provides the functionality to identify if the network is being attacked. An IDS can be configured to watch for specific types of activities and then alert security personnel if that activity occurs. An IDS also can log various types of traffic on the network for analysis later. An IDS is an essential part of any good security setup.

Sidebar: Virtual Private Networks

Using firewalls and other security technologies, organizations can effectively protect many of their information resources by making them invisible to the outside world. But what if an employee working from home requires access to some of these resources? What if a consultant is hired to work on the internal corporate network from a remote location? In these cases, a virtual private network (VPN) is called for.

A VPN allows a user outside of a corporate network to detour around the firewall and access the internal network from the outside. A combination of software and security measures lets an organization allow limited access to its networks while at the same time ensuring overall security.

Physical Security

An organization can implement the best authentication scheme globally, develop the best access control, and install firewalls and intrusion prevention. Still, its security cannot be complete without the implementation of physical security. Physical security is the protection of the actual hardware and networking components that store and transmit information resources. To implement physical security, an organization must identify all of the vulnerable resources and ensure that these resources cannot be physically tampered with or stolen. These measures include the following.

- **Locked doors**: It may seem obvious, but all the security in the world is useless if an intruder can walk in and physically remove a computing device. High-value information assets should be secured in a location with limited access.
- **Physical intrusion detection**: High-value information assets should be monitored through the use of security cameras and other means to detect unauthorized access to the physical locations where they exist.
- **Secured equipment**: Devices should be locked down to prevent them from being stolen. One employee's hard drive could contain all of your customer information, so it must be secured.

- **Environmental monitoring**: An organization's servers and other high-value equipment should always be kept in a monitored room for temperature, humidity, and airflow. The risk of server failure rises when these factors go out of a specified range.
- **Employee training**: One of the most common ways thieves steal corporate information is to steal employee laptops while employees are traveling. Employees should be trained to secure their equipment whenever they are away from the office.

Security Policies

Besides the technical controls listed above, organizations also need to implement security policies as a form of administrative control. In fact, these policies should really be a starting point in developing an overall security plan. A good information-security policy lays out the guidelines for employee use of the information resources of the company. It provides the company recourse in the case that an employee violates a policy.

A security policy should be guided by the information security triad discussed above. It should lay out guidelines and processes for employees to follow to access all resources to maintain the three categories' integrity: confidentiality, integrity, and availability.

Policies require compliance and need to be enforceable; failure to comply with a policy will result in disciplinary action. SANS Institute's Information Security Policy Page (2020) lists many templates for different types of security policies. One example of a security policy is how remote access should be managed, which can be found here.

A security policy should also address any governmental or industry regulations that apply to the organization. For example, if the organization is a university, it must be aware of the Family Educational Rights and Privacy Act (FERPA), which restricts who has access to student information. Health care organizations are obligated to follow several regulations, such as the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA).

Sidebar: Mobile Security

As mobile devices such as smartphones and tablets proliferate, organizations must be ready to address the unique security concerns that these devices use. One of the first questions an organization must consider is whether to allow mobile devices in the workplace.

Many employees already have these devices, so the question becomes: Should we allow employees to bring their own devices and use them as part of their employment activities? Or should we provide the devices to our employees? Creating a BYOD ("Bring Your Own Device") policy allows employees to integrate themselves more fully into their job and bring higher employee satisfaction and productivity. It may be virtually impossible to prevent employees from having their own smartphones or iPads in the workplace in many cases. If the organization provides the devices to its employees, it gains more control over the use of the devices, but it also exposes itself to the possibility of an administrative (and costly) mess.

Mobile devices can pose many unique security challenges to an organization. Probably one of the biggest concerns is the theft of intellectual property. It would be a straightforward process for an employee with malicious intent to connect a mobile device either to a computer via the USB port or wirelessly to the corporate network and download confidential data. It would also be easy to take a high-quality picture using a built-in camera secretly.

When an employee has permission to access and save company data on their device, a different security threat emerges: that device now becomes a target for thieves. Theft of mobile devices (in this case, including laptops) is one of the primary methods that data thieves use.

So, what can be done to secure mobile devices? It will start with a good policy regarding their use. Specific guidelines should include password policy, remote access, camera usage, voice recording, among others.

Besides policies, there are several different tools that an organization can use to mitigate some of these risks. For example, if a device is stolen or lost, geolocation software can help the organization find it. In some cases, it may even make sense to install remote data-removal software, which will remove data from a device if it becomes a security risk.

Usability

When looking to secure information resources, organizations must balance the need for security with users' need to access and use these resources effectively. If a system's security measures make it difficult to use, then users will find ways around the security, which may make the system more vulnerable than it would have been without the security measures! Take, for example, password

policies. If the organization requires an extremely long password with several special characters, an employee may resort to writing it down and putting it in a drawer since it will be impossible to memorize.

Reference:

Security Policy Templates. Retrieved September 6, 2020, from SANS Institute's Information Security www.sans.org/information-security-policy/

This page titled 6.3: Tools for Information Security is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **6.3: Tools for Information Security** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

6.4: Threat Impact

Chapter 5 discussed the different security threats and solutions. However, users need to safeguard their personal information as well.

Personally identifiable information (PII)

According to the FBI's Internet Crime Complaint Center (IC3), $13.3 Billion of total losses has been reported from 2016 to 2020 (IC3, 2020). Examples of crime types include phishing, personal data breach, identity theft, credit card fraud. The age of the victim ranges from 20 to 60 years old. For a detailed report, see the 2020 Internet crime report. The true number may be even higher since many victims did not report for a variety of reasons.

Personally identifiable information (PII) is any information that can be used to identify a person positively. Particular PII Examples include:

- Name
- Social Security number
- Birthday
- Credit card information
- Bank
- Account Numbers
- Government ID
- Address (street, email, telephone numbers)

One of the cybercriminals' most lucrative targets is acquiring PII lists that can then be sold on the dark web. The dark web can only be accessed through special software, and cybercriminals use it to shield their activities. Stolen PII can be used to build fraudulent accounts, such as short-term loans and credit cards.

Protected Health Information (PHI) is a subset of PII. The medical community produces and manages PHI-containing electronic medical records (EMRs). In the U.S., the Health Insurance Portability and Transparency Act (HIPAA) governs PHI handling. In the European Union, a similar law is called data security.

Lost Competitive Advantage

In cyberspace, companies are constantly concerned about corporate hacking. Another major concern is the loss of trust that occurs when a firm cannot protect its customers' personal data. The loss of competitive advantage may result from this loss of confidence rather than from stealing trade secrets by another firm or country.

Reference:

2020 IC3 Report. Retrieved April 6, 2021, from https://www.ic3.gov/Media/PDF/AnnualReport/2020_IC3Report.pdf

This page titled 6.4: Threat Impact is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **6.4: Threat Impact** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

6.5: Fighters in the War Against Cybercrime- The Modern Security Operations Center

Besides the tools and practices discussed earlier to protect ourselves, companies also have increased their investment to fight against cybercrime. One such investment is a dedicated center called Security Operations Center to safeguard companies from internal and external threats.

Elements of a SOC

Defending against today's threats requires a formalized, structured, and disciplined approach that is carried out by Security Operations Centers professionals who work closely with other groups such as IT or networking staff. SOCs offers a wide variety of services tailored to meet customer needs, from monitoring and compliance to comprehensive threat detection and hosted protection. SOCs may be wholly in-house, owned and run by a company, or security providers, such as Cisco Systems Inc.'s Managed Security Services, may be contracted to elements of a SOC. The key elements of a SOC are individuals, processes, and technology.

A great way to fight against threats is through Artificial Intelligence (AI) and machine learning. AI and machine learning use multi-factor authentication, malware scanning, and fighting spam and phishing to fight against threats.

Process in the SOC

SOC professionals monitor all suspicious activities and follow a set of rules to verify if it is a true security incident before escalating to the next level severity for the incident for appropriate security experts to take appropriate actions.

The SOC has four principal functions:

- Use network data to check the security warnings
- Evaluate accidents that have been checked and determine how to proceed
- Deploy specialists to evaluate risks at the highest possible level.
- Provide timely communication by SOC management to the company or clients

Technologies deployed in the SOC include:

- Event collection, correlation, and analysis
- Security monitoring
- Security control
- Log management
- Vulnerability assessment
- Vulnerability tracking
- Threat intelligence

Enterprise and Managed Security

The organization will benefit from the implementation of an enterprise-level SOC for medium and large networks. The SOC could be a complete solution within the company. Yet many larger organizations will outsource at least part of the SOC operations to a security solution provider such as Cisco Systems Inc.

This page titled 6.5: Fighters in the War Against Cybercrime- The Modern Security Operations Center is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **6.5: Fighters in the War Against Cybercrime- The Modern Security Operations Center** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

6.6: Security vs. Availability

Much of the business networks will still be up and running. Security staff recognizes that network stability must be maintained for the company to achieve its goals.

Any company or industry has a small tolerance for downtime on networks. Usually, this tolerance is based on calculating downtime costs with the cost of insuring against downtime.

For example, using a router as a single point of failure could be tolerable in a small retail business with only one location. However, if a large portion of that company's sales is from online shoppers, the owner may want to have a redundancy degree to ensure there is always a connection.

Desired uptime is also expressed in the number of down-minutes in a year. For example, an uptime of "five nines" means the network is up by 99.999 percent of the time or down by no more than 5.256 minutes a year. "Four nines" would be a 52.56-minute downtime per capita.

Availability %	**Downtime**
99.8%	17.52 hours
99.9% (“three nines”)	8.76 hours
99.99% (“four nines”)	52.56 minutes
99.999% (“five nines”)	5.256 minutes
99.9999% (“six nines”)	31.5 seconds
99.99999% (“seven nines”)	3.15 seconds

But security cannot be so powerful that it interferes with employee needs or business functions. This is often a tradeoff between good security and allowing companies to work efficiently.

This page titled 6.6: Security vs. Availability is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **6.6: Security vs. Availability** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

6.7: Summary

Summary

People, businesses, and even nations can all fall victim to cyberattacks. There are different types of attackers, including amateurs attacking for fun and prestige, hacktivists hacking for a political cause, and professional hackers attacking for profit. Besides, nations that attack other nations to gain an economic advantage by intellectual property theft or harm or destroy another country's properties. The vulnerable networks are PC and server business networks and the thousands of computers on the Internet of Things.

Fight against cyberattacks requires people, processes, and technology to follow best practices and good security policies. There are tools that users can employ to protect personally identifiable information. There are policies that companies can require of their customers and employees to protect their resources. Companies can also invest in dedicated Security Operations Centers (SOCs) for cybercrime prevention, identification, and response.

This page titled 6.7: Summary is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **6.7: Summary** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

6.8: Study Questions

Study Questions

1. Briefly define the three components of the information security triad
2. Explain what authentication means
3. Give two examples of a complex password
4. Give three examples of threat actors
5. Name two motivations of hacktivists to commit cybercrime
6. List five ways to defend against cyber attacks
7. List three examples of PII
8. Briefly explain the role of SOC
9. Explain the purpose of security policies
10. Explain how information availability related to a successful organization

Exercises

1. Research and analyze cybersecurity incidents to come up with scenarios of how organizations can prevent an attack.
2. Discuss some IoT (Internet of Things) application vulnerabilities with non-techie and techie technology users, then compare and contrast their different perspectives and reactions to IoT vulnerabilities.
3. Describe one multi-factor authentication method that you have experienced and discuss the pros and cons of using multi-factor authentication.
4. Identify the password policy at your place of employment or study. Assess if it is a good policy or not. Explain.
5. Take inventory of possible security threats that your home devices may be exposed to. List them and discuss their potential effects and what you plan to do about them.
6. Recall when you last back up your data. Discuss the method you use. Define a backup policy for your home devices.
7. Research the career of a SOC professional. Report what certificate training it requires to become SOC professionals, what the demand is for this career, and their salary range.

This page titled 6.8: Study Questions is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **6.8: Study Questions** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

SECTION OVERVIEW

2: Information Systems for Strategic Advantage

7: Leveraging Information Technology (IT) for Competitive Advantage

7.1: Introduction
7.2: The Productivity Paradox
7.3: Competitive Advantage
7.4: Using Information Systems for Competitive Advantage
7.5: Investing in IT for Competitive Advantage
7.6: Summary
7.7: Study Questions

8: Business Processes

8.1: Introduction
8.2: What Is a Business Process?
8.3: Summary
8.4: Study Questions

9: The People in Information System

9.1: Introduction
9.2: The Creators of Information Systems
9.3: Information-Systems Operations and Administration
9.4: Managing Information Systems
9.5: Emerging Roles
9.6: Career Path in Information Systems
9.7: Information-Systems Users – Types of Users
9.8: Summary
9.9: Study Questions

10: Information Systems Development

10.1: Introduction
10.2: Systems Development Life Cycle (SDLC) Model
10.3: Software Development
10.4: Implementation Methodologies
10.5: Summary
10.6: Study Questions
10.7: Summary

This page titled 2: Information Systems for Strategic Advantage is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

7: Leveraging Information Technology (IT) for Competitive Advantage

Learning Objectives

Upon successful completion of this chapter, you will be able to:

- Describe Porter's competitive forces model and how information technology impacts competitive advantage.
- Describe Porter's value chain model and its relationship to IT.
- Describe information systems that can provide businesses with a competitive advantage.
- Describe the collaborative systems that workers can use to contribute to their organization.
- Distinguish between a structured and an unstructured decision and its connection to IT.
- Discuss the challenges associated with a sustainable competitive advantage.

This chapter examines the impact that information systems have on organizations, how they can use IT to develop and sustain competitive advantages and improve operational effectiveness in their value chain and decision-making processes. We will discuss seminal works by Brynjolfsson, Carr, and Porter related to IT and competitive advantage.

7.1: Introduction
7.2: The Productivity Paradox
7.3: Competitive Advantage
7.4: Using Information Systems for Competitive Advantage
7.5: Investing in IT for Competitive Advantage
7.6: Summary
7.7: Study Questions

This page titled 7: Leveraging Information Technology (IT) for Competitive Advantage is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

7.1: Introduction

For over fifty years, since the microprocessor's invention, computing technology has been a part of the business. From UPC scanners and computer registers at your local neighborhood store to huge inventory databases used by companies like Amazon, information technology has become the backbone of commerce. Organizations have spent trillions of dollars on information technologies. But has all this investment in IT made a difference? Do computers increase productivity? Are companies that invest in IT more competitive? This chapter will look at the value IT can bring to an organization and try to answer these questions. We will begin by highlighting two important works from the past two decades.

This page titled 7.1: Introduction is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **7.1: Introduction** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

7.2: The Productivity Paradox

In 1991, Erik Brynjolfsson wrote an article, published in the Communications of the ACM, entitled "The Productivity Paradox of Information Technology: Review and Assessment" By reviewing studies about the impact of IT investment on productivity, Brynjolfsson was able to conclude that the addition of information technology to business had not improved productivity at all – the "productivity paradox." He concluded that this paradox resulted from our inability to unequivocally document any contribution after so much effort due to the lack of quantitative measures.

In 1998, Brynjolfsson and Lorin Hitt published a follow-up paper entitled " Beyond the Productivity Paradox. " In this paper, the authors utilized new data that had been collected and found that IT did, indeed, provide a positive result for businesses. Further, they found that sometimes the true advantages in using technology were not directly relatable to higher productivity but to "softer" measures, such as the impact on organizational structure. They also found that the impact of information technology can vary widely between companies.

IT Doesn't Matter

Just as a consensus was forming about IT's value, the Internet stock market bubble burst; two years later, in 2003, Harvard professor Nicholas Carr wrote his article "IT Doesn't Matter" in the Harvard Business Review. In this article, Carr asserts that as information technology has become more ubiquitous, it has also become less of a differentiator. In other words: because information technology is so readily available and the software used so easily copied, businesses cannot hope to implement these tools to provide any competitive advantage. IT is essentially a commodity, and it should be managed like one: low cost, low risk. IT management should see themselves as a utility within the company and work to keep costs down. For IT, providing the best service with minimal downtime is the goal. As you can imagine, this article caused quite an uproar, especially from IT companies. Many articles were written in defense of IT; many others in support of Carr.

The best thing to come out of the article and the subsequent book was that it opened up discussion on IT's place in a business strategy and exactly what role IT could play in competitive advantage. It is that question that we want to address in the rest of this chapter.

References

Brynjolfsson, E. and Hitt, L. (1998). *Beyond the Productivity Paradox*. Communications of the ACM. Retrieved August 16, 2020, from https://doi.org/10.1145/280324.280332

Brynjolfsson, E. (1992). *The Productivity Paradox of Information Technology: Review and Assessment*. Center for Coordination Science MIT Sloan School of Management Cambridge, MA. Retrieved from August 16, 2020, from http://ccs.mit.edu/papers/CCSWP130/ccswp130.html

Carr, Nicholas G (2003) *IT Doesn't Matter*. Retrieved August 20 from https://hbr.org/2003/05/it-doesnt-matter

This page titled 7.2: The Productivity Paradox is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **7.2: The Productivity Paradox** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

7.3: Competitive Advantage

What do Walmart, Apple, and McDonald's have in common?

Figure 7.3.1: Image Competitive landscape by PaulaD.MezaD is licensed CC BY-SA 4.0

All three businesses have a Competitive advantage. What does it mean when a company has a competitive advantage? What are the factors that play into it? According to Michael Porter in his book "Competitive Advantage: Creating and Sustaining Superior Performance," a company is said to have a competitive advantage over its rivals when it can sustain profits that exceed the industry's average. Porter identified two basic types of competitive advantage:

- **Cost advantage**: When the firm can deliver the same benefits as competitors but at a lower cost. McDonald's and Walmart both utilize economies of scale to maintain their cost advantage.
- **Differentiation advantage**: When a firm can deliver benefits that exceed those of competing products. Apple's innovative products that complement each other and share the same operating system offer a unique product that gives consumers a sense of exclusivity, and their trade-in programs build consumer loyalty.

The question, then, is: How can information technology be a factor in achieving Competitive advantage? We will explore this question by using:

- Two analysis tools from Porter's book "Competitive advantage: Creating and Sustaining Superior Performance:
  - The value chain
  - The Five Forces model.
- Porter's analysis in his 2001 article "Strategy and the Internet."

The Value Chain

In his book, Porter analyzes the basis of competitive advantage and describes how a company can achieve it using the value chain as a framework. A value chain is a step-by-step business model transforming a product or service from an idea (i.e., materials) to reality (i.e., products or services). Value chains help increase a business's efficiency so the business can deliver the most value(i.e., profit) for the least possible cost. Each step (or activity) in the value chain contributes to a product or service's overall value. While the value chain may not be a perfect model for every type of company, it does provide a way to analyze just how a company is producing value.

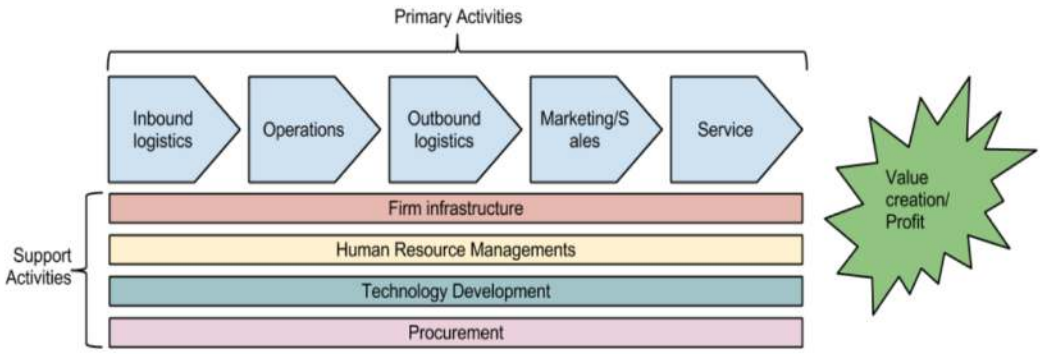


Figure 7.3.2: Porter's Value Chain. Image by David Bourgeois is licensed CC BY 4.0

The value chain is made up of two sets of activities: primary activities and support activities. We will briefly examine these activities and discuss how information technology can create value by contributing to cost advantage or differentiation advantage, or both.

The primary activities are the functions that directly impact the creation of a product or service, its sales, and after-sales service. The goal of the primary activities is to add more value than they cost. The primary activities are:

- **Inbound logistics**: Purchasing, Receiving, and storing raw materials. Information technology can make these processes more efficient, such as with supply-chain management systems, which allow the suppliers to manage their own inventory. Starbucks has company-appointed coffee buyers that select the finest quality coffee beans from producers in Latin America, Africa, and Asia.
- **Operations**: Any part of a business involved in converting the raw materials into the final products or services is part of operations. From manufacturing to business process management (covered in chapter 8), information technology can provide more efficient processes and increase innovation through information flows.
- **Outbound logistics**: These functions include order processing and warehousing required to get the product out to the customer. As with inbound logistics, IT can improve processes, such as allowing for real-time inventory checks. IT can also be a delivery mechanism itself.
- **Marketing/Sales**: The functions that will entice buyers to purchase the products (advertising, salesforce) are part of sales and marketing. Information technology is used in almost all aspects of this activity. From online advertising to online surveys, IT can innovate product design and reach customers like never before. The company website can be a sales channel itself.
- **Service**: The functions a business performs after the product has been purchased, such as installation, customer support, complaint resolution, and repair to maintain and enhance its value, are part of the service activity. Service can be enhanced via technology as well, including support services through websites and knowledge bases.

The support activities are the functions in an organization that support and cut across all primary activities. The support activities are:

- **Firm infrastructure**: Organizational functions such as finance, accounting, ERP Systems (covered in chapter 9), and quality control, all of which depend on information technology.
-
- **Technology development**: Technological advances and innovations support the primary activities. These advances are then integrated across the company to add value in different departments. Information technology would fall specifically under this activity.
- Procurement: Acquiring the raw materials used in the creation of products and services is called procurement. Business-to-business e-commerce can be used to improve the acquisition of materials.

A value chain is a powerful tool in analyzing and breaking down a company into its relevant activities that result in higher prices and lower cost, by understanding how these activities are connected and the company's strategic objectives, companies can identify their core competencies and insight into how information technology can be used to achieve a competitive advantage.

Look at this example of the Starbucks value chain model analysis that includes a short video by Prableen Bajpai: Analyzing Starbucks Value Chain Model.

Porter's Five Forces

Porter recognized that other factors could impact a company's profit in addition to competition from their rivals. He developed the "five forces" model as a framework for analyzing the competition in an industry and its strengths and weaknesses. The model consists of five elements, each of which plays a role in determining an industry's average profitability.

Figure 7.3.3: Porter's Five Forces. Image by Grahams Child is licensed CC BY-SA 3.0

In 2001, Porter wrote an article entitled "Strategy and the Internet," in which he takes this model and looks at how the Internet(and IT) impacts an industry's profitability. Although the model's details differ from one industry to another, its general structure of the five forces is universal. Let's have a look at how the internet plays a role in Porter's five forces model:

- **Threat of New Entrants**: The easier it is to enter an industry, the tougher it will be to profit in that industry. The Internet has an overall effect of making it easier to enter industries. Traditional barriers such as the need for a physical store and sales force to sell goods and services are drastically reduced. Dot-coms multiplied for that very reason: All a competitor has to do is set up a website. The geographical reach of the internet enables distant competitors to compete more directly with a local firm. For example, a manufacturer in Northern California may now have to compete against a manufacturer in the Southern United States, where wages are lower.
- **Threat of Substitute Products**: How easily can a product or service be replaced with something else? The more types of products or services there can meet a particular need, and the less profitability will be in an industry. For example, the advent of the mobile phone has replaced the need for pagers. The Internet has made people more aware of substitute products, driving down industry profits in those industries being substituted. Any industry in which digitized information can replace material goods such as books, music, software is at particular risk (Think, for example, Amazon's Kindle and Spotify).
- **Bargaining Power of Suppliers**: Companies can more easily find alternative suppliers and compare prices more easily. When a sole supplier exists, then the company is at the mercy of the supplier. For example, if only one company makes the controller chip for a car engine, that company can control the price, at least to some extent. The Internet has given companies access to more suppliers, driving down prices. On the other hand, suppliers now also have the ability to sell directly to customers. As companies use IT to integrate their supply chain, participating suppliers will prosper by locking customers and increasing switching costs.
- **Bargaining Power of Customers**: A company that is the sole provider of a unique product has the ability to control pricing. But the Internet has given customers access to information about products and more options (small and big business) to choose from.
- **Threat of Substitute Products**: The more competitors in an industry, the bigger a factor price becomes. The visibility of internet applications on the Web makes proprietary systems more difficult to keep secret. It is straightforward to copy technology, so innovations will not last that long. For example, Sony Reader was released in 2006, followed by Amazon Kindle

in 2007, and just two years later, Barnes and Noble Nook, which was the best-selling unit in the US before iPad (with built-in reading app iBooks) hit the market in 2010. (Wikipedia: E-Reader, 2020)

According to this model, the company's average profitability depends on the five forces' collective strength. If the five forces are intense, for example, in the airline industry, almost no company makes a huge profit. If the forces are mild, for example, the soft drink industry, there is room for higher profits. The Internet provides better opportunities for companies to establish strategic advantage by boosting efficiency in various ways, as we will see in the next section. However, the internet also tends to dampen suppliers' bargaining power and increase the threat of substitute products by making it easier for buyers and sellers to do business. Thus, the Internet (and, by extension, information technology in general) has the overall impact of increasing competition and lowering profitability. This is the great paradox of the internet.

While the Internet has certainly produced many big winners, the overall winners have been the consumers, who have been given an ever-increasing market of products and services and lower prices.

References

Bajpai, P (2020). *Analyzing Starbucks Value Chain Model*. Retrieved August 16, 2020, from https://www.investopedia.com/articles/investing/103114/starbucks-example-value-chain-model.asp

Porter, M. (2001). *Strategy and the Internet.* Harvard Business Review. Retrieved August 20, 2020, from http://hbswk.hbs.edu/item/2165.html

---

This page titled 7.3: Competitive Advantage is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **7.3: Competitive Advantage** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

7.4: Using Information Systems for Competitive Advantage

Information Systems support or shape a business unit's organizational strategy to provide a competitive advantage. Any information system - Business Process Management (BPM), Electronic Data Interchange (EDI), Management Information System (MIS), Decision Support System (DSS), Transaction Processing Systems (TPS) - that helps a business deliver a product or service at a lower cost that is differentiated that focuses on a specific market segment or is innovative is a strategic information system. Companies typically have several different types of information systems; each type serves a different level of decision-making - operational (workers), tactical (middle and senior managers), and strategic (executives).

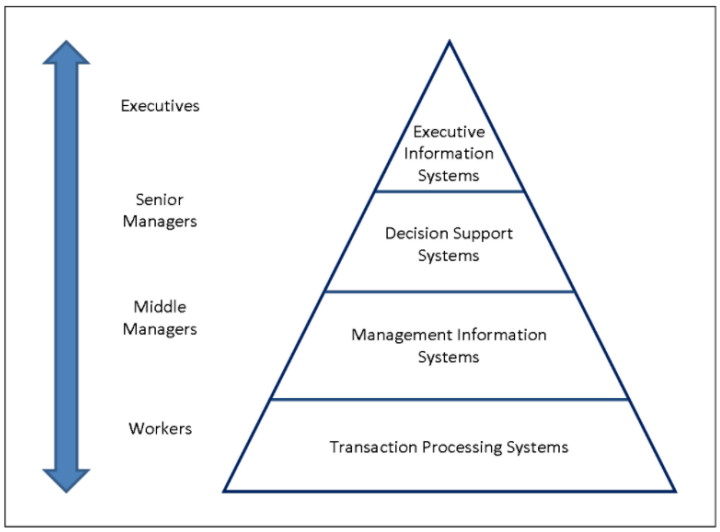


Figure 7.4.1: A four-level pyramid model of different types of Information Systems based on the different levels of hierarchy in an organization. Image by By Compo is licensed CC BY-SA 3.0

Let's look at a few examples.

Electronic Data Interchange (EDI)

Typically, a paper-based exchange of purchase orders and invoices takes a week to process. Using EDI, the process can be completed within hours!. By integrating suppliers and distributors via EDI, a company can improve speed, efficiency, and security, thus vastly reducing the resources required to manage relevant business information. Cleo, TrueCommerce EDI, Jitterbit, GoAnywhere MFT are some of the many EDI software that can be used in conjunction with a data integration platform.

EDI can take the role of supply chain management and the standard format of information exchange used by many systems discussed below.

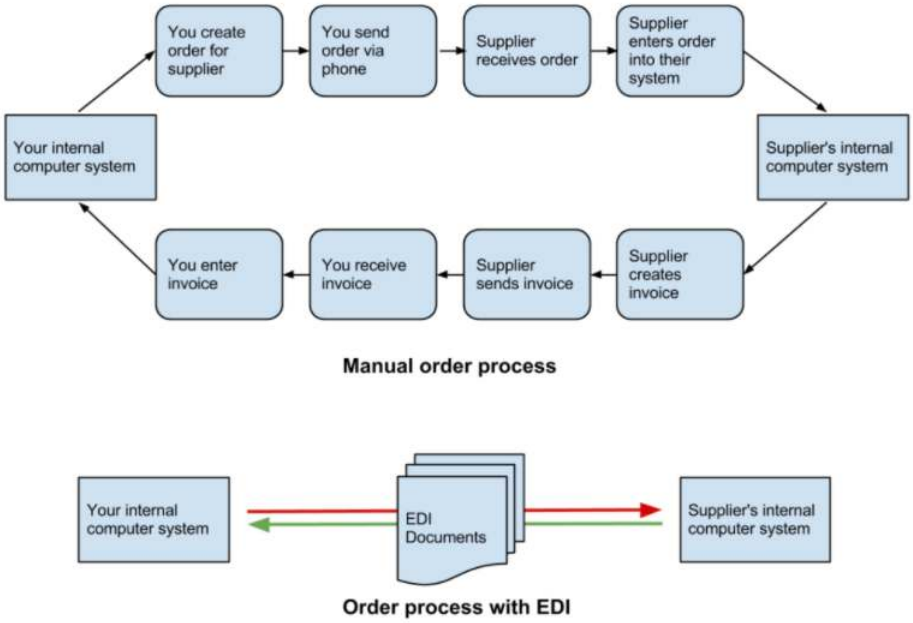


Figure 7.4.2: Comparison of Process with and without EDI. Image by David Bourgeois is licensed CC BY 4.0

Transaction Processing Systems (TPS)

Transaction processing systems (TPS) are computerized information systems developed to process large amounts of data for routine business transactions such as payroll, order processing, airline reservations, employee records, accounts payable, and receivable. TPS eliminates the tedium of necessary repetitive transactions that take time and labor and makes them efficient and accurate, although people must still input data to computerized systems. Transaction processing systems are boundary-spanning systems that allow the organization to interact with external environments. TPS examples include ATMs, credit card authorizations, online bill payments, and self-checkout stations at retail stores. IT enables all of this to happen in real-time.

Business Process Management (BPM)

Business process management is the automated integration of process information targeted to streamline operations, reduce costs and improve customer service (Ken Vollmer, BPMInstitute.org). Unlike EDI, BPM is used both internally and externally, between applications within a business and between companies. Large financial institutions like Bank of America use BPM to link, integrate and automate different applications - Credit card, bank account, loans - thus resulting in a delivery time for financial transactions from weeks to minutes.

Management Information Systems (MIS)

Management Information systems(MIS): users, hardware, and software that support decision making. MIS collects and stores its key data and produces information that managers need for analysis, control, and decision-making. For example, input from the sales of different products can be used to analyze trends of performing well and those that are not. Managers use this analysis to make semi-structured decisions such as changes to future inventory orders and manufacturing schedules.

MIS, IS, and IT sound very similar and are often confused. MIS is a type of IS that is more organization-based and focused on leveraging IT to increase business value(i.e., Profit). IT or IT management is the technical management of an IT department which can include MIS.

Decision Support Systems (DSS)

A decision support system (DSS) is a computerized information system that supports business or organizational decision-making activities by sifting through and analyzing a huge amount of data and producing comprehensive information reports. As technology continues to advance, DSS is not limited to just huge mainframe computers - DSS applications can be loaded on most desktops, laptops, and even mobile devices. For example, GPS route planning determines the fastest and best route between two points: analyzing and comparing multiple options and factoring in traffic conditions.

Marketing executives at a furniture company(like Living Spaces) could run DSS models that use sales data and demographic assumptions to develop forecasts of the types of furniture that would appeal to the fastest-growing population groups.

DSSs can exist at different levels of decision-making within the organization, from executives to senior managers, and helps people make decisions about a wide variety of problems, ranging from highly structured decisions to unstructured decisions.

- **A structured decision** is usually one that is repetitive and routine and is based directly on the inputs. For example, a company decides whether or not to withdraw funds from an international account depending on the current exchange rate. EDI and TPS typically handle structured decisions. Structured decisions are good candidates for automation, but we don't necessarily build decision-support systems for them.
- **An unstructured decision** has a lot of unknowns and relies on knowledge and/or expertise. An information system can support these decisions by providing the decision-makers with information-gathering tools and collaborative capabilities. An example of an unstructured decision might be what types of a new product should be created and what market should be targeted.

Decision support systems work best when the decision-maker(s) are making semi-structured decisions. A semi-structured decision is one in which most of the factors needed for making the decision are known, but human experience and other outside factors may still play a role. A good example of a semi-structured decision would be diagnosing a medical condition. Farmers using crop=planning tools to determine the best time to plant, fertilize and reap is another example.

DSSs can be as simple as a spreadsheet that allows for the input of specific variables and then calculates required outputs such as inventory management. Another DSS might assist in determining which products a company should develop. Input into the system could include market research on the product, competitor information, and product development costs. The system would then analyze these inputs based on the specific rules and concepts programmed into them. Finally, the system would report its results, with recommendations and/or key indicators to decide.

A DSS can be looked at as a tool for competitive advantage in that it can give an organization a mechanism to make wise decisions about products and innovations.

Collaborative Systems

As organizations began to implement networking technologies, information systems emerged that allowed employees to collaborate differently. Tools such as document sharing and video conferencing allowed users to brainstorm ideas together and collaborate without the necessity of physical, face-to-face meetings.

Broadly speaking, any software that allows multiple users to interact on a document or topic could be considered collaborative. Electronic mail, a shared Word document, social networks, and discussion boards would fall into this broad definition. However, many software tools have been created that are designed specifically for collaborative purposes. These tools offer a broad spectrum of collaborative functions. They can exist as stand-alone systems or integrated with any of the information systems above. Here is just a shortlist of some collaborative tools available for businesses today:

Cloud Services refer to a wide variety of services delivered on-demand to companies and customers over the internet without the need for internal infrastructure or hardware.

Cloud Services

IBM Lotus Notes	• One of the first true “groupware” collaboration tools. • Provides a full suite of collaboration software, including integrated e-mail • Obsolete with the advent of newer, easier-to-use technologies like Google Drive and Microsoft SharePoint.
GitHub	• Code hosting platform for collaboration amongst programmers/developers of computer software • Used primarily for version control – to track changes in source code during software development.
Microsoft SharePoin	• Web-based document management and collaboration tool • Integrates with Office 365, which educators, students, office workers are familiar with. • Sharepoint was covered in more detail in Chapter 5
G Suite	• Formerly known as Google Apps for Work • Software as a Service (SaaS) product that groups all cloud-based productivity and collaboration tools developed by Google. • The innovative interface allows real-time document editing and sharing • Allows collaboration of other products, like Office 365. • Another SaaS that you may be familiar with is Dropbox

Online Video Conferencing Services allows two or more people in different geographical locations to meet and collaborate.

Online Video Conferencing Services

Zoom	• Most popular online video conferencing and meeting platform due to its user-friendly interface. • Great for small and large businesses as it can support up to 100p participants in online meetings • Wide variety of options such as screen share, whiteboard, live chat and messaging, recording, and breakout rooms. • Collaboration and Interaction from a variety of devices(computers, tablets, smartphones, etc.) • Google Chrome and Linux OS support
Cisco Webex	• Business communications platform that combines video and audio • Allows participants to interact with each other’s computer desktops • Top of the line security features, making it excellent for business with legitimate security concerns
Skype for Business	• Microsoft’s online meeting platform • Can support up to 250 participants for online meetings • Combines instant messaging, video conferencing, calling, and document collaboration in a single integrated app. • Skype that you use at home is good for small businesses and can support up to 50 participants.

With the explosion of the worldwide web, the distinction between these different systems has become fuzzy. Information systems are available to automate practically any business aspect - from managing inventory to sales and customer service. " Information

Technology(IT)" is now the category to designate any software-hardware-communications structures that today work as a virtual nervous system of society at all levels.

This page titled 7.4: Using Information Systems for Competitive Advantage is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **7.4: Using Information Systems for Competitive Advantage** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

7.5: Investing in IT for Competitive Advantage

In 2008, Brynjolfsson and McAfee published a study in the Harvard Business Review on IT's role in competitive advantage, titled "Investing in the IT That Makes a Competitive Difference." Their study confirmed that IT could play a role in competitive advantage if deployed wisely. In their study, they draw three conclusions:

- **First**, the data show that IT has sharpened differences among companies instead of reducing them. This reflects that while companies have always varied widely in their ability to select, adapt, and exploit innovations, technology has accelerated and amplified these differences.
- **Second**, good management matters: Highly qualified vendors, consultants, and IT departments might be necessary for the successful implementation of enterprise technologies themselves, but the real value comes from the process innovations that can now be delivered on those platforms. Fostering the right innovations and propagating them widely are executive responsibilities that can't be delegated.
- **Finally**, the competitive shakeup brought on by IT is not nearly complete, even in the IT-intensive US economy. We expect to see these altered competitive dynamics in other countries, as well, as their IT investments grow.

Artificial Intelligence (AI)

Let's watch this short video by The Royal Society, What is Artificial Intelligence? that explains what AI is and its role and impact in society.

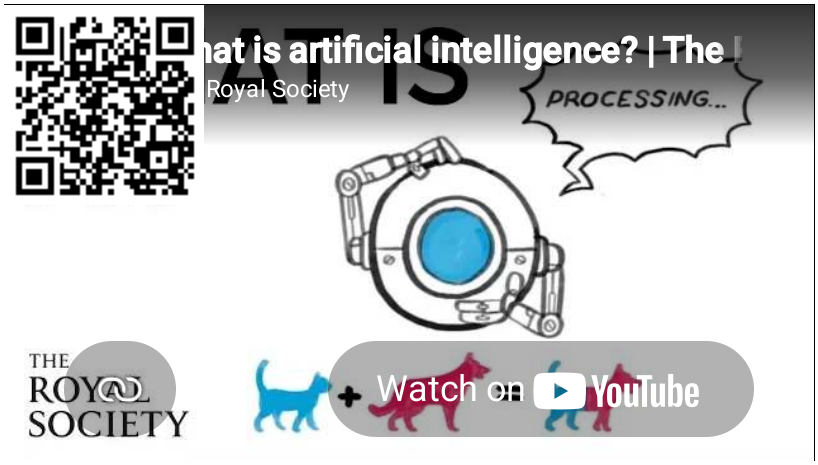


Figure 7.5.1: Technology with AI at its heart has the power to change the world, but what exactly is Artificial Intelligence? (The Royal Society; The Royal Society via https://youtu.be/nASDYRkbQIY)

In the tech-driven and ever-changing business landscape, successful leveraging and implementing IT has become the solution for maintaining competitive advantage and growth. One such solution is artificial intelligence (AI). AI (or machine intelligence) is intelligence demonstrated by machines - machines' ability to operate like a human brain - to learn patterns, provide insights and even predict future occurrences based on inputted data/information. For example, AI can give companies a competitive edge in marketing by providing insights into how to market, who to market to, when, and how to market. AI offers insights that are objective and data-driven. Amazon uses AI to follow user's behavior on their website - what type of products they buy, how long they spend on a product page, etc. The AI system quickly learns to generate tailored recommendations to each user's taste and preference based on their activity. Another advantage of AI is in cybersecurity and fraud protection. AI technologies can use user behavior data to identify and flag any activity that is out of the ordinary for any user (such as credit card use outside your home state). AI systems are very versatile in that they can handle all three types of decisions - structured, semi-structured, and unstructured.

Global Competition

Many companies today are operating in a global environment. In addition to multinational corporations, many companies now export or import and face competition from products created in countries where labor and other costs are low or where natural

resources are abundant. Electronic commerce facilitates global trading by enabling even small companies to buy from or sell to businesses in other countries. Amazon, Netflix, Apple, Samsung, LG, and many more have customers and suppliers worldwide.

References

McAfee, A. and Brynjolfsson, E. 2008). *Investing in the IT That Makes a Competitive Difference*. Harvard Business Review. Retrieved August 16, 2020, from https://hbr.org/2008/07/investing-in-the-it-that-makes-a-competitive-difference

The Royal Society. (2018). What is Artificial Intelligence? YouTube. [video file: 2:31 minutes] Closed Captioned.

This page titled 7.5: Investing in IT for Competitive Advantage is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **7.5: Investing in IT for Competitive Advantage** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

7.6: Summary

Summary

Information systems can and have been used strategically for competitive advantage by many US companies, including Walmart, Amazon, Netflix, and Apple. Acquiring a competitive advantage is hard, and sustaining it can be just as difficult because of technology's innovative nature. Organizations that want to gain a market edge must understand how they want to differentiate themselves and then use all the elements of information systems (hardware, software, data, people, and process) to accomplish that differentiation.

IT is not a panacea; just purchasing and installing the latest technology will not, by itself, make a company more successful. Instead, the combination of the right technologies, employee training, infrastructure, and good management, together, will give a company the best chance of a positive result.

This page titled 7.6: Summary is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **7.6: Summary** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

7.7: Study Questions

Study Questions

1. List the five forces in Porter's Competitive forces model.
2. What does it mean for a business to have a competitive advantage?
3. What are the primary activities and support activities of the value chain?
4. What has been the overall impact of the Internet on industry profitability? Who has been the true winner?
5. List two examples of how Amazon.com used Porter's five forces model to gain a competitive advantage.
6. Give an example of how the internet impacted Barnes and Noble's online(bn.com) profitability.
7. List and Compare the different information systems. How are they the same? How are they better?
8. Give an example of a semi-structured decision and explain what inputs would be necessary to assist in making the decision.
9. What does a collaborative information system do?
10. How can IT play a role in competitive advantage, according to the 2008 article by Brynjolfsson and McAfee?

Exercises

1. Discuss the idea that an information system by itself can rarely provide a sustainable competitive advantage.
2. Review the Zoom website. What features of Zoom would contribute to good collaboration? What makes Zoom a better collaboration tool than something like Skype or Google Hangouts?
3. Think of a semi-structured decision that you make in your daily life and build your own DSS using a spreadsheet to help you make that decision.
4. Give an example of AI that you see used in your daily life. Describe one way it can be improved or combined with another information system to gain an advantage.

This page titled 7.7: Study Questions is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **7.7: Study Questions** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

8: Business Processes

Learning Objectives

Upon successful completion of this chapter, you will be able to:

- Define the term business process
- Identify different systems needed to support business processes in an organization
- Explain the value of an enterprise resource planning(ERP) system
- Explain how business process management and business process engineering work; and
- Understand how information technology combined with business processes can bring an organization competitive advantage.

Business processes are the essence of what a business does, and information systems play an important role in making them work. This chapter will discuss business process management, business process reengineering, and ERP systems.

8.1: Introduction

8.2: What Is a Business Process?

8.3: Summary

8.4: Study Questions

This page titled 8: Business Processes is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

8.1: Introduction

In the last seven chapters, we have gone through the first four components of an information system (IS). In this chapter, we will discuss the fifth component of information systems, which is a process. People build information systems to solve problems faced by people. Have you wondered how organizations use IS to run their organizations, help their people communicate and collaborate? That is the role of Business Processes in an organization. This chapter will answer those questions and describe how business processes can be used for strategic advantage.

This page titled 8.1: Introduction is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **8.1: Introduction** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

8.2: What Is a Business Process?

What Is a Business Process?

We have all heard the term process before, but what exactly does it mean? A business process is a series of related tasks that are completed in a stated sequence to accomplish a business goal. This set of ordered tasks can be simple or complicated. However, the steps involved in completing these tasks can be documented or illustrated in a flow chart. If you have worked in a business setting, you have participated in a business process. Anything from a simple process for making a sandwich at Subway to building a space shuttle utilizes one or more business processes.

Processes are something that businesses go through every day to accomplish their mission. The better their processes, the more effective the business. Some businesses see their processes as a strategy for achieving competitive advantage. A process that uniquely achieves its goal can set a company apart. A process that eliminates costs can allow a company to lower its prices (or retain more profit).

Documenting a Process

Every day, we will conduct many processes without even thinking about them: getting ready for work, using an ATM, reading our email, etc. But as processes grow more complex, they need to be documented.

For businesses, it is essential to do this because it allows them to ensure control over how activities are undertaken in their organization. It also allows for standardization: McDonald's has the same process for building a Big Mac in its restaurants.

The simplest way to document a process is to create a list. The list shows each step in the process; each step can be checked off upon completion. For example, a simple process, such as how to create an account on Amazon, might look like a checklist such as::

- Go to www.amazon.com.
- Click on "Hello Sign in Account" on the top right of the screen
- Select "start here" after the question "new customers?"
- Select "Create your Amazon account."
- Enter your name, email, password
- Select "Create Your Amazon account."
- Check your email to verify your new Amazon account

For processes that are not so straightforward, documenting the process as a checklist may not be sufficient. Some processes may need to be documented as paths to be followed depending on certain conditions being met. For example, here is the process for determining if an article for a term needs to be added to Wikipedia:

- Search Wikipedia to determine if the term already exists.
- If the term is found, then an article is already written, so you must think of another term. Repeat step 1.
- If the term is not found, then look to see if there is a related term.
- If there is a related term, then create a redirect.
- If there is not a related term, then create a new article.

This procedure is relatively simple – in fact, it has the same number of steps as the previous example – but because it has some decision points, it is more difficult to track with a simple list. In these cases, it may make more sense to use a diagram to document the process to illustrate both the above steps and the decision points:

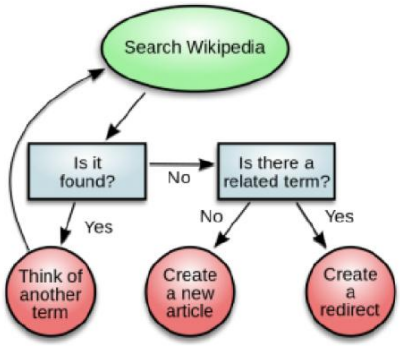


Figure **8.2.1**: Process diagram for determining if a new term should be added to Wikipedia. Image by David Bourgeois, Ph.D. is licensed Public Domain

Documenting Business Processes

To standardize a process, organizations need to document their processes and continuously keep track of them to ensure accuracy. As processes change and improve, it is important to know which processes are the most recent. It is also important to manage the process to be easily updated, and changes can be tracked!

The requirement to manage the documentation process is made easy by software tools such as document management, project management, or Business Process Modeling (BPM) software (discussed later in this chapter). Examples include Microsoft Project, IBM's Business Process Manager. It includes standardized notations and common techniques such as:

- **Versions and timestamps**: BPM will keep multiple versions of documents. The most recent version of a document is easy to identify and will be served up by default.
- **Approvals and workflows**: When a process needs to be changed, the system will manage both access to the documents for editing and the document's routing for approvals.
- **Communication**: When a process changes, those who implement the process need to be aware of the changes. The system will notify the appropriate people when a change to a document is approved.
- **Techniques to model the processes**. Standard graphical representations such as a flow chart, Gantt chart, Pert diagram, or Unified Modeling Language can be used, which we will touch upon in Chapter 10.

Of course, these systems are not only used for managing business process documentation, and they have continued to evolve. Many other types of documents are managed in these systems, such as legal documents or design documents.

Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) Systems

An ERP system is a software application with a centralized database that can be used to run an entire company.

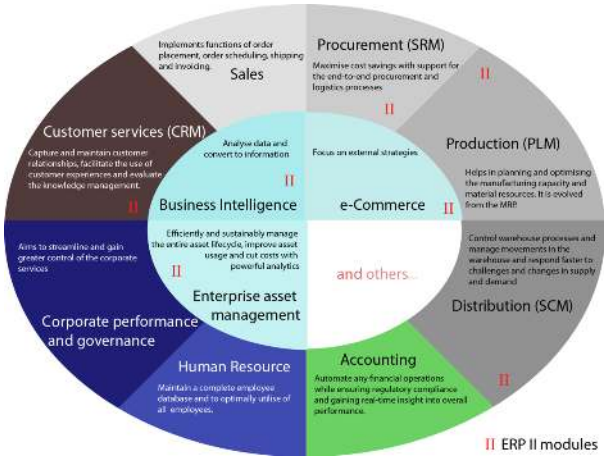


Figure **8.2.2**: Enterprise systems modules. Image by Shing Hin Yeung, is licensed under CC by-SA 3.0

Let's look at an ERP and associated modules as illustrated in Fig 8.2.

- **It is a software application**: The system is a software application, which means that it has been developed with specific logic and rules. It has to be installed and configured to work specifically for an individual organization.
- **It has a centralized database**: The inner circle of Fig 8.2 indicates that all data in an ERP system is stored in a single, central database. This centralization is key to the success of an ERP – data entered in one part of the company can be immediately available to other parts of the company. Examples of types of data are shown: business intelligence, eCommerce, assets management, among others.
- **It can be used to run an entire company**: An ERP can be used to manage an entire organization's operations, as shown in the outermost circle of Fig 8.2. Each function is supported by a specific ERP module, reading clockwise from the top: Procurement, Production, Distribution, Accounting, Human Resource, Corporate performance and government, Customer services, Sales. Companies can purchase some or all available modules for an ERP representing different organization functions, such as finance, manufacturing, and sales, to support their continued growth.

When an ERP vendor designs a module, it has to implement the associated business processes' rules. A selling point of an ERP system is that it has best practices built right into it. In other words, when an organization implements an ERP, it also gets improved best practices as part of the deal.

For many organizations, implementing an ERP system is an excellent opportunity to improve their business practices and upgrade their software simultaneously. But for others, an ERP brings them a challenge: Is the process embedded in the ERP really better than the process they are currently utilizing? If they implement this ERP, and it happens to be the same one that all of their competitors have, will they become more like them, making it much more difficult to differentiate themselves?

This has been one of the criticisms of ERP systems: they commoditize business processes, driving all businesses to use the same processes, thereby losing their uniqueness. The good news is that ERP systems also have the capability to be configured with custom processes. For organizations that want to continue using their own processes or even design new ones, ERP systems offer ways to support this through customizations.

But there is a drawback to customizing an ERP system: organizations have to maintain the changes themselves. Whenever an update to the ERP system comes out, any organization that has created a custom process will be required to add that change to their ERP. This will require someone to maintain a listing of these changes and retest the system every time an upgrade is made. Organizations will have to wrestle with this decision: When should they go ahead and accept the best-practice processes built into the ERP system, and when should they spend the resources to develop their own processes? It makes the most sense only to customize those processes that are critical to the competitive advantage of the company.

Some of the best-known ERP vendors are SAP, Microsoft, and Oracle.

Registered trademark of SAP

Adopting an ERP is about adopting a standard business process across the entire company. The benefits are many, so are the risks of adopting an ERP system. Organizations can spend up to millions of dollars and a few years to fully implement an ERP. Hence, adopting an ERP is a strategic decision to decide how a company wants to run its organization based on a set of business rules and processes to deliver competitive advantages.

Business Process Management (BPM)

Organizations that are serious about improving their business processes will also create structures to manage those processes. BPM can be thought of as an intentional effort to plan, document, implement, and distribute an organization's business processes with information technology support.

BPM is more than just automating some simple steps. While automation can make a business more efficient, it cannot provide a competitive advantage. On the other hand, BPM can be an integral part of creating that advantage, as we saw in Chapter 7.

Not all of an organization's processes should be managed this way. An organization should look for processes essential to the business's functioning and those that may be used to bring a competitive advantage. The best processes to look at include employees from multiple departments, those who require decision-making that cannot be easily automated, and processes that change based on circumstances.

Let's examine an example. Suppose a large clothing retailer is looking to gain a competitive advantage through superior customer service. As part of this, they create a task force to develop a state-of-the-art returns policy that allows customers to return any clothing article, no questions asked. The organization also decides that to protect the competitive advantage that this returns policy will bring, they will develop their own customization to their ERP system to implement this returns policy. As they prepare to roll out the system, they invest in training for all of their customer-service employees, showing them how to use the new system and process returns. Once the updated returns process is implemented, the organization will measure several key indicators about returns that will allow them to adjust the policy as needed. For example, if they find that many customers are returning their high-end clothing after wearing them once, they could implement a change to the process that limits – to, say, fourteen days – the time after the original purchase that an item can be returned. As changes to the returns policy are made, the changes are rolled out via internal communications, and updates to the system's returns processing are made. In our example, the system would no longer allow an item to be returned after fourteen days without an approved reason.

If done properly, business process management will provide several key benefits to an organization, contributing to competitive advantage. These benefits include:

- **Empowering employees**: When a business process is designed correctly and supported with information technology, employees will implement it on their own authority. In our returns policy example, an employee would be able to accept returns made before fourteen days or use the system to make determinations on what returns would be allowed after fourteen days.
- **Built-in reporting**: By building measurement into the programming, the organization can keep up to date on key metrics regarding their processes. In our example, these can improve the returns process and, ideally, reduce returns.
- **Enforcing best practices**: As an organization implements processes supported by information systems, it can implement the best practices for that business process class. In our example, the organization may require that all customers returning a product without a receipt show a legal ID. This requirement can be built into the system so that the return will not be processed unless a valid ID number is entered.
- **Enforcing consistency**: By creating a process and enforcing it with information technology, it is possible to create consistency across the organization. In our example, all stores in the retail chain can enforce the same returns policy. And if the returns policy changes, the change can be instantly enforced across the entire chain.

Business Process Re-engineering (BPR)

As organizations look to manage their processes to gain a competitive advantage, they also need to understand that their existing ways of doing things may not be the most effective or efficient. A process developed in the 1950s will not be better just because it is now supported by technology.

In 1990, Michael Hammer's article (1990) "Reengineering Work: Don't Automate, Obliterate." discusses how simply automating a bad process does not make it better. Instead, companies should "blow up" their existing processes and develop new processes that take advantage of the new technologies and concepts. Instead of automated outdated processes that do not add value, companies should use modern IT technologies to re-engineer their processes to achieve significant performance improvements radically.

Business process reengineering is not just taking an existing process and automating it. BPR fully understands the process's goals and then dramatically redesigns it from the ground up to achieve dramatic improvements in productivity and quality. But this is easier said than done. Most of us think about making small, local improvements to a process; complete redesign requires thinking on a larger scale.

Hammer provides some guidelines for how to go about doing business process reengineering. You can read an excerpt from the July-August 1990 HBR issue (accessible with a free account at HBR, at the time of this writing). A summary of the guidelines is below:

- **Organize around outcomes, not tasks.** This means to design the process so that, if possible, one person performs all the steps. Instead of repeatedly repeating one step in the process, the person stays involved in the process from start to finish. For example, Mutual Benefit LIfe's use of one person(a case manager) to perform all tasks required for a completed insurance application from paperwork, medical checks, risk checks to policy pricing.
- **Have those who use the outcomes of the process perform the process**. Using information technology, many simple tasks are now automated to empower the person who needs the process's outcome to perform it. Hammer's example is purchasing:

instead of having every department in the company use a purchasing department to order supplies, have the supplies ordered directly by those who need the supplies using an information system.

- **Subsume information-processing work into the real work that produces the information**. When one part of the company creates information (like sales information or payment information), it should be processed by that department. There is no need for one part of the company to process information created in another part of the company. An example of this is Ford's redesigned accounts payable process where receiving processes the information about goods received rather than sending it to accounts payable.
- **Treat geographically dispersed resources as though they were centralized**. With the communications technologies in place today, it becomes easier than ever to not worry about physical location. A multinational organization does not need separate support departments (such as IT, purchasing, etc.) for each location.
- **Link parallel activities instead of integrating their results**. Departments that work in parallel should share data and communicate with each other during their activities instead of waiting until each group is done and then comparing notes.
- **Put the decision points where the work is performed, and build controls into the process**. The people who do the work should have decision-making authority, and the process itself should have built-in controls using information technology. The workers become self-managing and self-controlling, and the manager's role changes to supporter and facilitator.
- **Capture information once at the source**. Requiring information to be entered more than once causes delays and errors. With information technology, an organization can capture it once and then make it available whenever needed.

These principles may seem like common sense today, but in 1990 they took the business world by storm. Ford and Mutual Benefit Life's successful attempt at reengineering a core business process have become textbook examples of Business process Reengineering.

Organizations can improve their business processes by many orders of magnitude without adding new employees, simply changing how they did things (see sidebar). For examples of how modern businesses of this century undergo process reengineering to competitive advantage, read this blog by Carly Burdova on minit.

Unfortunately, business process reengineering got a bad name in many organizations. This was because it was used as an excuse for cost-cutting that really had nothing to do with BPR. For example, many companies used it as an excuse for laying off part of their workforce. Today, however, many BPR principles have been integrated into businesses and are considered part of good business process management.

Sidebar: Re-engineering the College Bookstore

The process of purchasing the correct textbooks on time for college classes has always been problematic. And now, with online bookstores such as Amazon and Chegg competing directly with the college bookstore for students' purchases, the college bookstore is under pressure to justify its existence.

But college bookstores have one big advantage over their competitors: they have access to students' data. In other words, once a student has registered for classes, the bookstore knows exactly what books that student will need for the upcoming term. To leverage this advantage and take advantage of new technologies, the bookstore wants to implement a new process that will make purchasing books through the bookstore advantageous to students. Though they may not compete on price, they can provide other advantages, such as reducing the time it takes to find the books and guaranteeing that the book is the correct one for the class. To do this, the bookstore will need to undertake a process redesign.

The process redesign's goal is simple: capture a higher percentage of students as customers of the bookstore. The before and after the reengineering is shown in Figure 8.2.3.

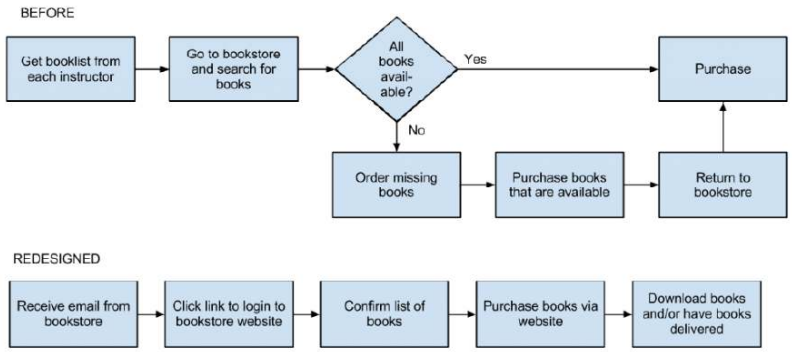


Figure 8.2.3: College bookstore process redesign. Image by David Bourgeois, Ph.D. is licensed CC BY 4.0

The Before process steps are:

1. The students get a booklist from each instructor
2. Go to the bookstore to search for the books on the list
3. If they are available, then students can purchase them
4. If they are not available, then the students will order the missing books
5. The students purchase the missing books
6. Students may need to do step 3 if it is not yet done

After diagramming the existing process and meeting with student focus groups, the bookstore develops a new process. In the newly redesigned process:

1. The bookstore utilizes information technology to reduce the amount of work the students need to do to get their books by sending the students an email with a list of all the books required for their upcoming classes along with purchase options(new, used, or rental)
2. By clicking a link in this email, the students can log into the bookstore, confirm their books, and pay for their books online.
3. The bookstore will then deliver the books to the students.

The new re-engineered process delivers the business goal of capturing a larger percentage of students as customers of the bookstore using technology to provide a valuable value-added service to students to make it convenient and faster.

ISO Certification

Many organizations now claim that they are using best practices when it comes to business processes. To set themselves apart and prove to their customers (and potential customers) that they are indeed doing this, these organizations seek out an ISO 9000 certification.

ISO is an acronym for International Standard Organization, representing a global network of national standards bodies

Registered trademark of International Standard Organization. Image by International Organization for Standardization is licensed CC-by-SA 4.0 International

This body defines quality standards that organizations can implement to show that they are, indeed, managing business processes in an effective way. The ISO 9000 certification is focused on quality.

To receive ISO certification, an organization must be audited and found to meet specific criteria. In its most simple form, the auditors perform the following review:

- Tell me what you do (describe the business process).
- Show me where it says that (reference the process documentation).
- Prove that this is what happened (exhibit evidence in documented records).

Over the years, this certification has evolved, and many branches of the certification now exist. The ISO 9000 family addresses various aspects of quality management. ISO certification is one way to separate an organization from others regarding its quality and services and meet customer expectations.

References

Hammer, Michael (1990). *Reengineering work: don't automate, obliterate.* Harvard Business Review 68.4: 104–112

This page titled 8.2: What Is a Business Process? is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **8.2: What Is a Business Process?** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

8.3: Summary

Summary

The advent of information technologies has had a huge impact on how organizations design, implement and support business processes. From document management to project management to ERP systems, information systems are tied into organizational processes. Using business process management, organizations can empower employees and leverage their processes for competitive advantage. Using business process reengineering, organizations can vastly improve their effectiveness and the quality of their products and services. Integrating information technology with business processes is one-way information systems can bring an organization a lasting competitive advantage.

This page titled 8.3: Summary is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **8.3: Summary** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

8.4: Study Questions

Study Questions

1. What does the term business process mean?
2. What are three examples of business processes (from a job you have had or an organization you have observed?
3. What is the value of documenting a business process?
4. What is an ERP system? How does an ERP system enforce best practices for an organization?
5. What is one of the criticisms of ERP systems?
6. What is business process reengineering? How is it different from incrementally improving a process?
7. Why did BPR get a bad name?
8. List the guidelines for redesigning a business process.
9. What is business process management? What role does it play in allowing a company to differentiate itself?
10. What does ISO certification signify?

Exercises

1. Think of a business process that you have had to perform in the past. How would you document this process? Would a diagram make more sense than a checklist? Document the process both as a checklist and as a diagram.
2. Review the return policies at your favorite retailer and then answer this question: What information systems do you think need to be in place to support their return policy.
3. If you were implementing an ERP system, in which cases would you be more inclined to modify the ERP to match your business processes? What are the drawbacks of doing this?
4. Which ERP is the best? Do some original research and compare three leading ERP systems to each other. Write a two- to three-page paper that compares their features.
5. Research a company that chooses to implement an ERP. Write a report to describe it.
6. Research a failed implementation of an ERP. Write a report to describe why.
7. Research and write a report on how a company can obtain an ISO quality management certification.

This page titled 8.4: Study Questions is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **8.4: Study Questions** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

9: The People in Information System

Learning Objectives

Upon successful completion of this chapter, you will be able to:

- Describe each of the different roles that people play in the design, development, and use of information systems;
- Understand the different career paths available to those who work with information systems;
- Explain the importance of where the information-systems function is placed in an organization;
- Describe the different types of users of information systems.

This chapter will provide an overview of the different types of people involved in information systems. This includes people(and machines) who create information systems, those who operate and administer information systems, those who manage or support information systems, those who use information systems, and IT's job outlook.

9.1: Introduction
9.2: The Creators of Information Systems
9.3: Information-Systems Operations and Administration
9.4: Managing Information Systems
9.5: Emerging Roles
9.6: Career Path in Information Systems
9.7: Information-Systems Users – Types of Users
9.8: Summary
9.9: Study Questions

This page titled 9: The People in Information System is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

9.1: Introduction

In this text's opening chapters, we focused on the technology behind information systems: hardware, software, data, and networking. In the last chapter, we discussed business processes and the key role they can play in a business's success. In this chapter, we will be discussing the last component of an information system: people.

Figure 9.1.1: People in Information systems. Image by Karen Arnold - PublicDomainPicutres is licensed CCO-PD

People are involved in information systems in just about every way you can think of: people imagine information systems, develop information systems, support information systems, and, perhaps most importantly, people use information systems.

This page titled 9.1: Introduction is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **9.1: Introduction** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

9.2: The Creators of Information Systems

The first group of people we are going to look at plays a role in designing, developing, and building information systems. These people are generally very technical and have a background in programming and mathematics. Just about everyone who works in creating information systems has a minimum of a bachelor's degree in computer science or information systems. However, that is not necessarily a requirement. We will be looking at the process of creating information systems in more detail in chapter 10.

Systems Analyst

The systems analyst's role is unique in that it straddles the divide between identifying business needs and imagining a new or redesigned computer-based system to fulfill those needs. This individual will work with a person, team, or department with business requirements and identify the specific details of a system that needs to be built. Generally, this will require the analyst to understand the business itself, the business processes involved, and the ability to document them well. The analyst will identify the different stakeholders in the system and work to involve the appropriate individuals.

Once the requirements are determined, the analyst will begin translating these requirements into an information-systems design. A good analyst will understand what different technological solutions will work and provide several different alternatives to the requester, based on the company's budgetary constraints, technology constraints, and culture. Once the solution is selected, the analyst will create a detailed document describing the new system. This new document will require that the analyst understand how to speak in systems developers' technical language.

A systems analyst generally is not the one who does the actual development of the information system. The design document created by the systems analyst provides the detail needed to create the system and is handed off to a programmer (or team of programmers) to do the actual creation of the system. In some cases, however, a systems analyst may create the system that he or she designed. This person is sometimes referred to as a programmer-analyst.

In other cases, the system may be assembled from off-the-shelf components by a person called a systems integrator. This is a specific type of systems analyst that understands how to get different software packages to work with each other.

To become a systems analyst, you should have a background in business and systems design. You also must have strong communication and interpersonal skills plus an understanding of business standards and new technologies. Many analysts first worked as programmers and/or had experience in the business before becoming systems analysts. The best systems analysts have excellent analytical skills and are creative problem solvers.

Computer Programmer (or Software developer)

A computer programmer or software developer is responsible for writing the code that makes up computer software. They write, test, debug and create documentation for computer programs. In the case of systems development, programmers generally attempt to fulfill the design specifications given to them by a systems analyst. Many different programming styles exist: a programmer may work alone for long stretches of time or may work in a team with other programmers. A programmer needs to understand complex processes and the intricacies of one or more programming languages. They are usually referred to by the programming language they most often use: Java programmer or Python programmer. Good programmers are very proficient in mathematics and excel at logical thinking.

Computer Engineer

Computer engineers design the computing devices that we use every day. There are many types of computer engineers who work on various types of devices and systems. Some of the more prominent engineering jobs are as follows:

- **Hardware engineer**: A hardware engineer designs hardware components, such as microprocessors. A hardware engineer is often at the cutting edge of computing technology, creating something brand new. Other times, the hardware engineer's job is to engineer an existing component to work faster or use less power. Many times, a hardware engineer's job is to write code to create a program that will be implemented directly on a computer chip.
- **Software engineer**: Software engineers do not actually design devices; instead, they create new programming languages and operating systems, working at the lowest hardware levels to develop new kinds of software to run on the hardware.

- **Systems engineer**: A systems engineer takes the components designed by other engineers and makes them all work together. For example, to build a computer, the motherboard, processor, memory, and hard disk all have to work together. A systems engineer has experience with many different hardware and software types and knows how to integrate them to create new functionality.
- **Network engineer**: A network engineer's job is to understand the networking requirements and then design a communications system to meet those needs, using the networking hardware and software available.

There are many different types of computer engineers, and often the job descriptions overlap. While many may call themselves engineers based on a company job title, there is also a professional designation of "professional engineer," which has specific requirements behind it. In the US, each state has its own set of requirements for using this title, as do different countries around the world. Most often, it involves a professional licensing exam.

References

Careers in IT. Retrieved November 13, 2020, from https://www.itcareerfinder.com/it-careers/mobile-application-developer.html

---

This page titled 9.2: The Creators of Information Systems is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **9.2: The Creators of Information Systems** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

9.3: Information-Systems Operations and Administration

Another group of information-systems professionals is involved in the day-to-day operations and administration of IT. These people must keep the systems running and up-to-date so that the rest of the organization can make the most effective use of these resources.

Computer Operator

A computer operator is a person who keeps large computers running. This person's job is to oversee the mainframe computers and data centers in organizations. Some of their duties include keeping the operating systems up to date, ensuring available memory and disk storage, and overseeing the computer's physical environment. Since mainframe computers have increasingly been replaced with servers, storage management systems, and other platforms, computer operators' jobs have grown broader and include working with these specialized systems.

Database Administrator

A database administrator (DBA) is the person who manages the databases for an organization. This person operates and maintains databases, including database recovery and backup procedures, used as part of applications or the data warehouse. They are responsible for securing the data and ensuring that only users who are approved to access the data can do so. The DBA also consults with systems analysts and programmers on projects requiring access to or creating databases.

- **Database Architect**: Database architects design and create secure databases that meet the needs of an organization. They work closely with software designers, design analysts, and others to create comprehensive databases that may be used by hundreds, if not thousands, of people. Most organizations do not staff a separate database architect position. Instead, they require DBAs to work on both new and established database projects.
- **Database Analys**t: Some organizations create a separate position, Database Analyst, who looks at databases from a higher level. He analyzes database design and the changing needs of an organization, recommends additions for new projects, and designs the tables and relationships.
- **Oracle DBA**: A DBA that specializes in Oracle database. Oracle DBA's handle capacity planning, evaluate database server hardware, and manage all aspects of an Oracle database, including installation, configuration, design, and data migration.

Help-Desk/Support Analyst

Most midsize to large organizations have their own information-technology help desk and are the most visible IT roles. The help desk is the first line of support for computer users in the company. Computer users who are having problems or need information can contact the help desk for assistance. Often, a help-desk worker is a junior-level employee who does not necessarily know how to answer all of the questions that come his or her way. In these cases, help-desk analysts work with senior-level support analysts or have a computer knowledgebase at their disposal to help them investigate the problem at hand. The help desk is a great place to break into IT because it exposes you to all of the company's different technologies. A successful help-desk analyst has conflict resolutions, active listening skills, problem-solving abilities, and a wide range of technical knowledge across hardware, software, and networks.

Trainer

A computer trainer conducts classes to teach people specific computer skills. For example, if a new ERP system is installed in an organization, one part of the implementation process is to teach all users how to use the new system. A trainer may work for a software company and be contracted to come in to conduct classes when needed; a trainer may work for a company that offers regular training sessions, or a trainer may be employed full time for an organization to handle all of their computer instruction needs. To be successful as a trainer, you need to be able to communicate technical concepts well and have a lot of patience!

Quality Support Engineers

A quality engineer establishes and maintains a company's quality standards and tests systems to ensure efficiency, reliability, and performance. They are also responsible for creating documentation that reports issues and errors relating to the computer and software systems.

This page titled 9.3: Information-Systems Operations and Administration is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **9.3: Information-Systems Operations and Administration** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

9.4: Managing Information Systems

The management of information-systems functions is critical to the success of information systems within the organization. Here are some of the jobs associated with the management of information systems.

Chief Information Officer(CIO)

The CIO, or chief information officer, is the head of the information-systems function. This person aligns the plans and operations of the information systems with the strategic goals of the organization. This includes tasks such as budgeting, strategic planning, and personnel decisions for the information-systems function. This is a high-profile position as the CIO is also the face of the organization's IT department. This involves working with senior leaders in all parts of the organization to ensure good communication and planning.

Interestingly, the CIO position does not necessarily require a lot of technical expertise. While helpful, it is more important for this person to have good management and people skills and understand the business. Many organizations do not have someone with the CIO's title; instead, the head of the information-systems function is called vice president of information systems or director of information systems.

Functional Manager

As an information-systems organization becomes larger, many of the different functions are grouped and led by a manager. These functional managers report to the CIO and manage the employees specific to their function. For example, in a large organization, a group of systems analysts reports to a systems-analysis function manager. For more insight into how this might look, see the discussion later in the chapter of how information systems are organized.

ERP Management

Organizations using an ERP require one or more individuals to manage these systems. These people make sure that the ERP system is completely up to date, work to implement any changes to the ERP needed, and consult with various user departments on needed reports or data extracts.

Project Managers

Information-systems projects are notorious for going over budget and being delivered late. In many cases, a failed IT project can spell doom for a company. A project manager is responsible for keeping projects on time and budget. This person works with the project stakeholders to keep the team organized and communicates the status of the project to management. A project manager does not have authority over the project team; instead, the project manager coordinates schedules and resources to maximize the project outcomes. A project manager must be a good communicator and an extremely organized person. A project manager should also have good people skills. Many organizations require their project managers to become certified as project management professionals (PMP).

Information-Security Officer

An information security officer is in charge of setting information-security policies for an organization and then overseeing those policies' implementation. This person may have one or more people reporting to them as part of the information security team. As information has become a critical asset, this position has become highly valued. The information-security officer must ensure that the organization’s information remains secure from both internal and external threats.

This page titled 9.4: Managing Information Systems is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **9.4: Managing Information Systems** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

9.5: Emerging Roles

As technology evolves, many new roles are becoming more common as other roles fade. For example, as we enter the age of “big data,” we see the need for more data analysts and business-intelligence specialists. Many companies are now hiring social media experts and mobile-technology specialists. The increased use of cloud computing and virtual-machine technologies also is breeding demand for expertise in those areas.

- **Cloud system engineer**: In the past, companies would typically store their data in large physical databases or even hire database firms, but today, they turn to cloud storage as a low-cost and effective means of storing data. This is where cloud engineers come in. They are responsible for the design, planning, management, maintenance, and support of an organization's cloud computing environment.
- **Cyber Security Analyst** (or engineer): As new technologies emerge, so do the number of security threats online. Cybersecurity is a growing field that focuses on protecting organizations from digital attacks and keeping their information and networks safe. The following are examples of some of the many cybersecurity roles:
  - Security Administrator: These professionals serve in high-level roles, overseeing the IT security efforts of their organization. They create policies and procedures, identify weak areas of networks, install firewalls, and respond to security breaches.
  - Security Architect: Security architects design, plan, and supervise systems that thwart potential computer security threats. They must find the strengths and weaknesses of their organizations' computer systems, often developing new security architectures.
  - Security Analyst: Organizations employ a security analyst to protect computer and networking systems from cyber-attacks and hackers and keep information and networks safe.
- **AI/Machine Learning Engineer**: These engineers develop and maintain AI (artificial intelligence) machines and systems that have the ability to learn and utilize existing knowledge. As more and more industries turn towards automating certain aspects of the workforce, AI engineers will be in high demand.
- **Computer Vision Engineer**: Computer vision engineers create and use computer vision and machine learning algorithms that acquire, process, and analyze digital images, videos, etc. Their work is closely linked to AR(augmented reality) and VR (virtual reality). As we see the rise of such technologies as self-driving vehicles, these skills' demands will continue to grow.
- **Big Data Engineer**: Big Data Engineers create and manage a company's Big Data infrastructure, such as SQL engines and tools. A big data engineer installs continuous pipelines that run to and from huge pools of filtered information from which data scientists can pull relevant data sets for their analyses.
- **Health Information Technician**: Health information technicians use specialized computer programs and administrative techniques to ensure that patient's electronic health records are complete, accurate, accessible, and secure.
- **Mobile Application developers**: Mobile App developers create software for mobile devices. They write programs inside a mobile development environment using Objective C, C++, or Java programming languages. A mobile app developer will typically choose an OS such as Google’s Android or Apple's IOS and develop apps for that environment.

This page titled 9.5: Emerging Roles is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **9.5: Emerging Roles** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

9.6: Career Path in Information Systems

These job descriptions do not represent all possible jobs within an information system organization. Larger organizations will have more specialized roles; smaller organizations may combine some of these roles. Many of these roles may exist outside of a traditional information-systems organization, as we will discuss below.

Figure 9.6.1: Jobs in Information Systems - Image from Pickpic is licensed CCO-PD

Working with information systems can be a rewarding career choice. Whether you want to be involved in very technical jobs (programmer, database administrator) or want to be involved in working with people (systems analyst, trainer), there are many different career paths available.

Often, those in technical jobs who want career advancement find themselves in a dilemma: do they want to continue doing technical work, where sometimes their advancement options are limited or do they want to become a manager of other employees and put themselves on a management career track? In many cases, those proficient in technical skills are not gifted with managerial skills. Some organizations, especially those that highly value their technically skilled employees, will create a technical track that exists in parallel to the management track to retain employees who are contributing to the organization. Today, most large organizations have dual career paths - the Managerial and Technical/Professional.

Then there are people from other fields who want to get into IT. For example, a writer wants to become a technical writer, and a salesperson may want to become a quality tester.

People have many different reasons for transitioning into the IT industry, and the timing couldn't be better. The IT industry is facing a massive shortage of workers, both domestic and international, and there are many employment opportunities at every level.

Sidebar: Are Certifications Worth Pursuing?

As technology is becoming more important to businesses, hiring employees with technical skills is becoming critical. But how can an organization ensure that the person they are hiring has the necessary skills? These days, many organizations are including technical certifications as a prerequisite for getting hired.

Certifications are designations given by a certifying body that someone has a specific knowledge level in a specific technology. This certifying body is often the vendor of the product itself, though independent certifying organizations, such as CompTIA, also exist. Many of these organizations offer certification tracks, allowing a beginning certificate as a prerequisite to getting more advanced certificates. To get a certificate, you generally attend one or more training classes and then take one or more certification exams. Passing the exams with a certain score will qualify you for a certificate. In most cases, these classes and certificates are not free and, in fact, can run into the thousands of dollars. Some examples of the certifications in the highest demand include Microsoft (software certifications), Cisco (networking), and SANS (security), Oracle (database, SQL).

For many working in IT (or thinking about an IT career), determining whether to pursue one or more of these certifications is an important question. For many jobs, such as those involving networking or security, the employer will require a certificate to determine which potential employees have a basic level of skill. For those already in an IT career, a more advanced certificate may lead to a promotion. However, other cases, when experienced with a certain technology, will negate the need for certification. For those wondering about the importance of certification, the best solution is to talk to potential employers and those already working in the field to determine the best choice. Perusing different job websites to see the trend of hot IT jobs and associated requirements is a good place to start.

Organizing the Information-Systems Function

In the early years of computing, the information-systems function (generally called data processing) was placed in the organization's finance or accounting department. As computing became more important, a separate information-systems function was formed. However, it was still generally placed under the CFO and considered an administrative function of the company. In the 1980s and 1990s, when companies began networking internally and then linking up to the Internet, the information-systems function was combined with the telecommunications functions and designated the information technology (IT) department. As information technology's role continued to increase, especially the increased risk over security and privacy, its place in the organization also moved up the ladder. In many organizations today, the head of IT (the CIO) reports directly to the CEO or COO. There are still places where IT reports to a VP of finance.

IT is often organized into these functions:

- IT support (call support)
- Security
- Database
- Network
- Applications to support end-user apps (i.e., Office) or enterprise apps (ERP, MRP).

The size of each function varies depending on the level of outsourcing a company decides to do.

Not all IT-related tasks are done directly by IT staff. Some tasks may be done by other groups in a firm such as Marketing or Manufacturing. For example, marketing or engineering groups may choose their own vendor to support and provide cloud services for the company's products or services. Collaboration with IT is critical to avoid creating confusion for end-user support and training. Some IT tasks can also be outsourced to external partners.

Outsourcing

Outsourcing- using third-party service providers- to handle some of your business processes became a popular business strategy back in the '80s and 90’s to combat rising labor costs and allow firms to focus on their core functions. For example, an early function that firms outsourced is payroll. With the Internet boom and bust in 2000-2001 and the rise of the global marketplace, outsourcing is now a common business strategy for companies of all sizes.

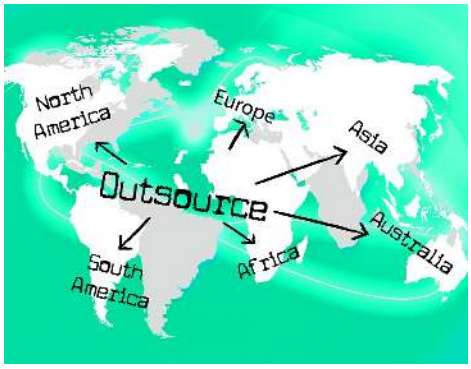


Figure 9.6.2: Outsourcing. Image by Jireh Gibson is licensed Pixabay

If an organization needs a specific skill for a limited period of time, instead of training an existing employee or hiring someone new, the job can be outsourced. Outsourcing can be used in many different situations within the information-systems function, such as designing and creating a new website or the upgrade of an ERP system. Some organizations see outsourcing as a cost-cutting move, contracting out a whole group or department. In some cases, outsourcing has become a necessity - the only feasible way to grow your business, launch a product, or manage operations is by using an outside vendor for certain tasks.

Job Outlook

IT jobs are projected to grow due to continued increase in cloud computing, cybersecurity concert, and firms’ expansion, from both computing and non-computing industries, to adopt new technologies and digital platforms,

According to the Bureau of Labor Statistics, jobs in computer and information system managers are projected to grow 10% from 2019 to 2029, 4% for network and computer systems administrators, 8% for computer support specialists.

References

Bureau of Labor Statistics, U.S. Department of Labor, Occupational Outlook Handbook, Computer and Information Systems Managers. Retrieved November 13, 2020, from https://www.bls.gov/ooh/management/computer-and-information-systems-managers.htm

Careers in IT. Retrieved November 13, 2020, from https://www.itcareerfinder.com/it-careers/mobile-application-developer.html

---

This page titled 9.6: Career Path in Information Systems is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **9.6: Career Path in Information Systems** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

9.7: Information-Systems Users – Types of Users

Information-Systems Users – Types of Users

Besides the people who work to create, administer, and manage information systems, one more significant group of people: the users of information systems. This group represents a considerable percentage of the people involved. If the user cannot successfully learn and use an information system, the system is doomed to failure.

One tool used to understand how users will adopt a new technology comes from a 1962 study by Everett Rogers. In his book, Diffusion of Innovation, 1 Rogers explains how new ideas and technology spread via communication channels over time. Innovations are initially perceived as uncertain and even risky. To overcome this uncertainty, most people seek out others like themselves who have already adopted the new idea or technology. Thus, the diffusion process consists of successive groups of consumers adopting new technology(shown in blue in the graph below); the adoption rate will start slowly and then dramatically increase once adoption reaches a certain point - its market share(yellow curve) reaches saturation level and becomes self-sustaining.

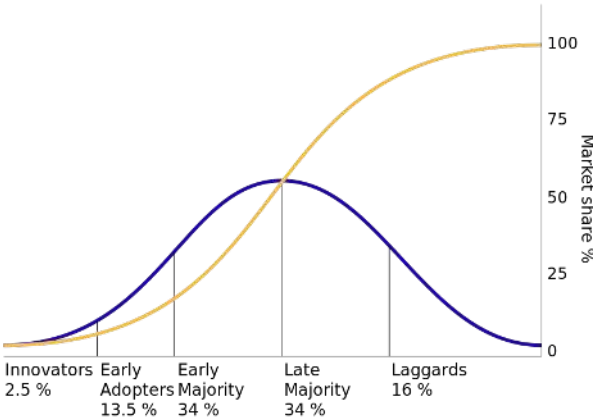


Figure 9.4: Technology adoption user types
Image by Rogers Everett, licensed under Public domain, via Wikimedia Commons

Rogers identified five (sections of the blue curve) specific types of technology adopters:

- **Innovators**: Innovators are the first individuals to adopt new technology. Innovators are willing to take risks, are the youngest in age, have the highest social class, have great financial liquidity, are very social, and have the closest contact with scientific sources and interaction with other innovators. Risk tolerance has them adopting technologies that may ultimately fail. Financial resources help absorb these failures (Rogers 1962 5th ed, p. 282).
- **Early adopters:** The early adopters adopt an innovation after a technology has been introduced and proven. These individuals have the highest degree of opinion leadership among the other adopter categories, which means that they can influence the largest majority's opinions. They are typically younger in age, have higher social status, more financial liquidity, more advanced education, and are more socially aware than later adopters. These people are more discrete in adoption choices than innovators and realize the judicious choice of adoption will help them maintain a central communication position (Rogers 1962 5th ed, p. 283).
- **Early majority**: Individuals in this category adopt an innovation after a varying degree of time. This time of adoption is significantly longer than the innovators and early adopters. This group tends to be slower in the adoption process, has above average social status, has contact with early adopters, and seldom holds opinion leadership positions in a system (Rogers 1962 5th ed, p. 283).
- **Late majority**: The late majority will adopt an innovation after the average member of the society. These individuals approach an innovation with a high degree of skepticism, have below-average social status, very little financial liquidity, contact others in the late majority and the early majority, and show very little opinion leadership.

- **Laggards**: Individuals in this category are the last to adopt an innovation. Unlike those in the previous categories, individuals in this category show no opinion leadership. These individuals typically have an aversion to change agents and tend to be advanced in age. Laggards typically tend to be focused on “traditions,” are likely to have the lowest social status and the lowest financial liquidity, be the oldest of all other adopters, and be only in contact with family and close friends.

Knowledge of the diffusion theory and the five types of technology users help provide additional insight into how to implement new information systems within an organization. For example, when rolling out a new system, IT may want to identify the innovators and early adopters within the organization and work with them first, then leverage their adoption to drive the implementation.

This process of diffusion of new ideas and technology can usually take months or years. But there are exceptions: the use of the internet in the 1990s and mobile devices in recent years to communicate, interact socially, access news and entertainment have spread more rapidly than possibly any other innovation in humankind's history.

References

Rogers, E. M. (1962). *Diffusion of innovations*. New York: Free Press

---

This page titled 9.7: Information-Systems Users – Types of Users is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **9.7: Information-Systems Users – Types of Users** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

9.8: Summary

Summary

This chapter has reviewed the many different categories of individuals - from the front-line help-desk workers to system analysts to chief information officer(CIO) -who make up the people component of information systems. The world of information technology is changing so fast that new roles are being created all the time, and roles that have existed for decades are being phased out. That said, this chapter should have given you a good idea of the importance of the people component of information systems.

This page titled 9.8: Summary is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **9.8: Summary** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

9.9: Study Questions

Study Questions

1. Describe the role of a systems analyst.
2. What are some of the different roles of a computer engineer?
3. What are the duties of a computer operator?
4. What does the CIO do?
5. Describe the job of a DBA.
6. Explain the point of having two different career paths in information systems.
7. What are the five types of information-systems users?
8. Why would an organization outsource?

Exercises

1. Which IT job would you like to have? Do some original research and write a two-page paper describing the duties of the job you are interested in.
2. Spend a few minutes on Dice or Monster to find IT jobs in your area. What are IT jobs currently available? Write up a two-page paper describing three jobs, their starting salary (if listed), and the skills and education needed for the job.
3. How is the IT function organized in your school or place of employment? Create an organization chart showing how the IT organization fits into your overall organization. Comment on how centralized or decentralized the IT function is.
4. What type of IT user are you? Take a look at the five types of technology adopters, and then write a one-page summary of where you think you fit in this model.

This page titled 9.9: Study Questions is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **9.9: Study Questions** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

10: Information Systems Development

Learning Objectives

Upon successful completion of this chapter, you will be able to:

- Explain the overall process of developing a new software application;
- Explain the differences between software development methodologies;
- Understand the different types of programming languages used to develop software;
- Understand some of the issues surrounding the development of mobile applications; and
- Identify the four primary implementation policies.

People build information systems for people's use. This chapter will look at different methods to manage an information system's development process, with special attention to software development, review mobile application development, and discuss end-user computing. We will look at key trade-offs that organizations face in making critical decisions to "build vs. buy or subscribe," the balancing act between scope, cost, and time while delivering a high-quality project and obtaining the buy-in from the users.

10.1: Introduction
10.2: Systems Development Life Cycle (SDLC) Model
10.3: Software Development
10.4: Implementation Methodologies
10.5: Summary
10.6: Study Questions
10.7: Summary

This page titled 10: Information Systems Development is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

10.1: Introduction

When someone has an idea for a new function to be performed by a computer, how does that idea become a reality? If a company wants to implement a new business process and needs new hardware or software to support it, how do they go about making it happen? How do they decide whether to build their own solution or buy or subscribe to a solution available in the market?

This chapter will discuss the different methods of taking those ideas and bringing them to reality, a process known as information systems development.

This page titled 10.1: Introduction is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **10.1: Introduction** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

10.2: Systems Development Life Cycle (SDLC) Model

Systems Development Life Cycle (SDLC) Model

SDLC was first developed in the 1960s to manage the large projects associated with corporate systems running on mainframes. It is a very structured process designed to manage large projects with many people's efforts, including technical, business, support professionals. These projects are often costly to build, and they have a large impact on the organization. A failed project or an incorrect business decision to pick a wrong project to fund can be a business or financial catastrophe for an organization.

SDLC is a model defining a process of a set of phases for planning, analysis, design, implementation, maintenance. Chapter 1 discusses that an information system (IS) includes hardware, software, database, networking, process, and people. SDLC has been used often to manage an IS project that may include one, some, or all of the elements of an IS. Let's walk through each of the five phases of an SDLC as depicted in Figure 10.1:

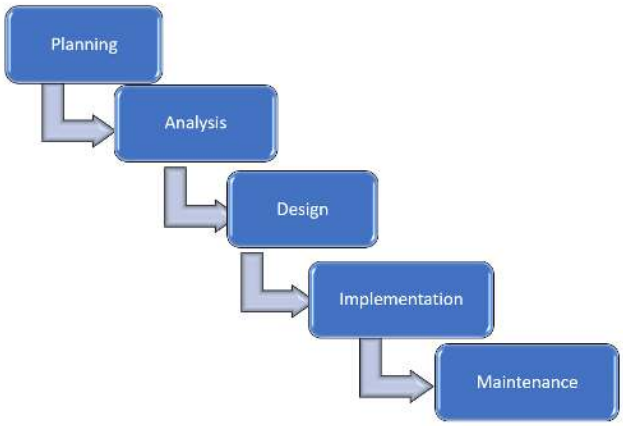


Fig 10.1 - Software Development Lifecycle Model. Image by Ly-Huong Pham, Ph.D. is licensed under CC BY NC

1. **Planning**. In this phase, a request is initiated by someone who acts as a sponsor for this idea. A small team is assembled to conduct a preliminary assessment of the request's merit and feasibility. The objectives of this phase are:
    - To determine how the request fits with the company's strategy or business goals.
    - To conduct a feasibility analysis, which includes an analysis of the technical feasibility (is it possible to create this?), the economic feasibility (can we afford to do this?), and the legal feasibility (are we allowed to do this?).
    - To recommend a go/no go for the request. If it is a go, then a concept proposal is also produced for management to approve.
2. **Analysis**. Once the concept proposal is approved, the project is formalized with a new project team (including the previous phase). Using the concept proposal as the starting point, the project members work with different stakeholder groups to determine the new system's specific requirements. No programming or development is done in this step. The objectives of this phase are:
    - Identify and Interview key stakeholders.
    - Document key procedures
    - Develop the data requirements
    - To produce a system-requirements document as the result of this phase. This has the details to begin the design of the system.
3. **Design**. Once the system requirements are approved, the team may be reconfigured to bring in more members. This phase aims for the project team to take the system requirements document created in the previous phase and develop the specific technical details required for the system. The objectives are:
    - Translate the business requirements into specific technical requirement
    - Design the user interface, database, data inputs and outputs, and reports

- Produce a system-design document as the result of this phase. . This document will have everything a programmer will need to create the system.

4. **Implementation**. Once a system design is approved, the software code finally gets written in the programming phase, and the development effort for other elements such as hardware also happens. The purpose is to create an initial working system. The objectives are:
   - Develop the software code, and other IS components. Using the system- design document as a guide, developers begin to code or develop all the IS project components.
   - Test the working system through a series of structured tests such as:
     - The first is a unit test, which tests individual parts of the code for errors or bugs.
     - Next is a system test, where the system's different components are tested to ensure that they work together properly.
     - Finally, the user-acceptance test allows those that will be using the software to test the system to ensure that it meets their standards.
     - Iteratively test any fixes again to address any bugs, errors, or problems found during testing.
     - Train the users
     - Provide documentation
     - Perform necessary conversions from any previous system to the new system.
     - Produce, as a result, the initial working system that meets the requirements laid out in the analysis phase and the design developed in the design phase.
5. **Maintenance**. This phase takes place once the implementation phase is complete. In this phase, the system must have a structured support process in place to:
   - Report bugs
   - Deploy bug fixes
   - Accept requests for new features
   - Evaluate the priorities of reported bugs or requested features to be implemented
   - Identify a predictable and regular schedule to release system updates and perform backups.
   - Dispose of data and anything else that is no longer needed

Organizations can combine or sub-divide these phases to fit their needs. For example, instead of one phase, Planning, an organization can choose to have two phases: Initiation, Concept; or splitting the implementation into two phases: implementation and testing.

Waterfall Model

One specific SDLC-based model is the Waterfall model, and the name is often thought to be the same as SDLC. It is used to manage software projects as depicted in Fig 10.2 with five phases: Requirements, Design, Implement, Verification, and Maintenance. This model stresses that each phase must be completed before the next one can begin (hence the name waterfall). For example, changes to the requirements are not allowed once the implementation phase has begun, or changes must be sought and approved to a change process. They may require the project to restart from the requirement phase since new requirements need to be approved, which may cause the design to be revised before the implementation phase can begin.

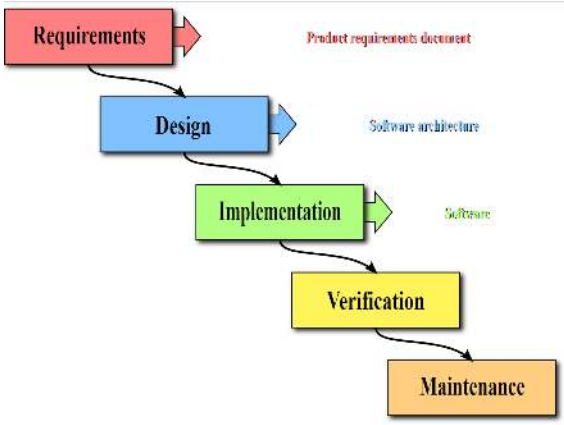


Fig 10.2 Waterfall Model of System Development. Image by Peter Kemp / Paul Smit is licensed CC BY 3.0

The waterfall model's rigid structure has been criticized for being quite rigid and causing teams to be risk-averse to avoid going back to previous phases. However, there are benefits to such a structure too. Some advantages and disadvantages of SDLC and Waterfall are:

Advantages and Disadvantage of SDLC and Waterfall

Advantages	Disadvantages
The robust process to control and track changes to minimize the number of risks can derail the project unknowingly.	Take time to record everything, which leads to additional cost and time to the schedule.
Standard and transparent processes help the management of large teams.	Too much time spent attending meetings, seeking approval, etc. which lead to additional cost and time to the schedule.
Documentation reduces the risks of losing personnel, easier to add people to the project.	Some members do not like to spend time writing, leading to the additional time needed to complete a project.
Easier to trace a problem in the system to its root whenever errors are found, even after the project is completed.	It is difficult to incorporate changes or customers' feedback since the project has to go back to one or more previous phases, leading teams to become risk-averse.

Other models are developed over time to address these criticisms. We will discuss two other models: Rapid Application Development and Agile, as different approaches to SDLC.

Rapid Application Development (RAD)

Rapid application development (RAD) is a software development (or systems-development) methodology that focuses less on planning and incorporating changes on an ongoing basis. RAD focuses on quickly building a working model of the software or system, getting feedback from users, and updating the working model. After several iterations of development, a final version is developed and implemented. Let's walk through the four phases in the RAD model as depicted in Fig. 10.3.

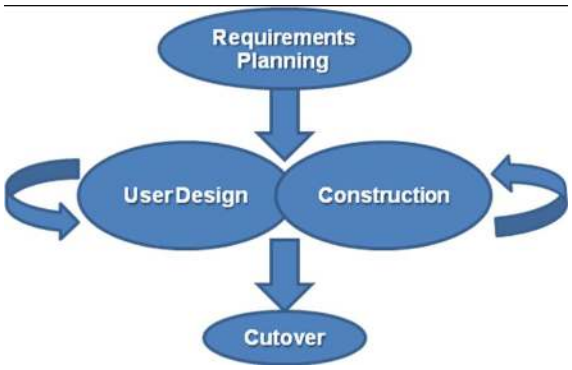


Fig 10.3 Image Rapid Application Development Model is licensed Public domain.

1. **Requirements Planning**. This phase is similar to the planning, analysis, and design phases of the SDLC.
2. **User Design**. In this phase, the users' representatives work with the system analysts, designers, and programmers to interactively create the system's design. One technique for working with all of these various stakeholders is the Joint Application Development (JAD) session. A JAD session gets all relevant users who interact with the systems from different perspectives, other key stakeholders, including developers, to have a structured discussion about the system's design. The objectives are for users to understand and adopt the working model and for the developers to understand how the system needs to work from the user's perspective to provide a positive user experience.
3. **Construction**. In the construction phase, the tasks are similar to SDLC's implementation phase. The developers continue to work interactively with the users to incorporate their feedback as they interact with the working model that is being developed. This is an interactive process, and changes can be made as developers are working on the program. This step is executed parallel with the User Design step in an iterative fashion until an acceptable version of the product is developed.
4. **Cutover**. This step is similar to some of the SDLC implementation phase tasks. The system goes live or is fully deployed. All steps required to move from the previous state to using the new system are completed here.

Compared to the SDLC or Waterfall model, the RAD methodology is much more compressed. Many of the SDLC steps are combined, and the focus is on user participation and iteration. This methodology is better suited for smaller projects and has the added advantage of giving users the ability to provide feedback throughout the process. SDLC requires more documentation and attention to detail and is well suited to large, resource-intensive projects. RAD is better suited for projects that are less resource-intensive and need to be developed quickly. Here are some of the advantages and disadvantages of RAD:

Advantages and Disadvantage of RAD

Advantages	Disadvantages
Increase quality due to the frequency of interacting with the users	Risks of weak implementation of features that are not visible to the users, such as security
Reduce risks of users' refusal to accept the finished product	Lack of control over the system changes due to a working version's fast turn-around to address users' issues.
Improve chances of on-time, on-budget completion as users update in real-time, avoiding surprises during development.	Lack of design since changes are being put in the system might unknowingly affect other parts of the system.
Increase interaction time between developers/experts and users	Scarce resources as developers are tied up, which could slow down other projects.
Best suited for small to medium size project teams	Difficult to scale up to large teams

Agile Development Methodologies

Agile methodologies are a group of methodologies that utilize incremental changes focusing on quality and attention to detail. Each increment is released in a specified period of time (called a time box), creating a regular release schedule with particular objectives. While considered a separate methodology from RAD, they share some of the same principles: iterative development, user interaction, and changeability. The agile methodologies are based on the "Agile Manifesto," first released in 2001.

The characteristics of agile methods include:

- small cross-functional teams that include development-team members and users;
- daily status meetings to discuss the current state of the project;
- short time-frame increments (from days to one or two weeks) for each change to be completed; and
- At the end of each iteration, a working project is completed to demonstrate to the stakeholders.

In essence, the Agile approach puts a higher value on tasks that promote interaction, build frequent working versions, customers/user collaboration, and quick response to change and less emphasis on processes and documentation. The agile methodologies' goal is to provide an iterative approach's flexibility while ensuring a quality product.

There are a variety of models that are built using Agile methodologies. One such example is the Scrum development model.

Scrum development model

This model is suited for small teams who work to produce a set of features within fixed-time interactions, such as two- to four weeks, called sprints. Let's walk through the four key elements of a Scrum model as depicted in Fig 10.4.

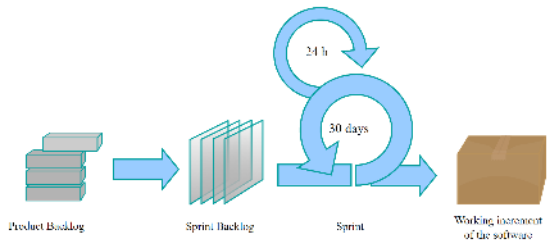


Fig 10.4. The Scrum project management method. Image by Lakeworks is licensed CC BY-SA 4.0

1. **Product backlog**. This is a detailed breakdown list of work to be done. All the work is prioritized based on criteria such as risks, dependencies, mission-critical, etc. Developers select their own tasks and self-organize to get the work done.
2. **Sprint backlog**. This is a list of the work to be done in the next sprint.
3. **Sprint**. This is a fixed time, such as 1-day, 2-weeks, or 4-weeks, as agreed by the team. A daily progress meeting is called a daily scrum, typically a short 10-15 minute meeting facilitated by a scrum master whose role is to remove roadblocks for the team.
4. **Working increment of the softwar**e. This is a working version that is incrementally built with the breakdown lists at the end of the sprints.

Lean Methodology

One last methodology we will discuss is a relatively new concept taken from the business bestseller The Lean Startup, by Eric Reis.

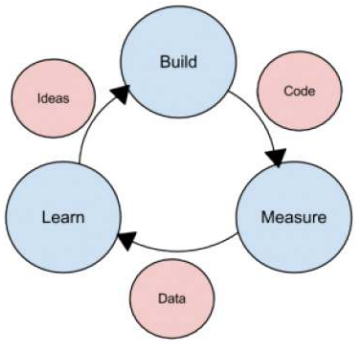


Fig 10.5. The Lean Methodology. David T. Bourgeois, Ph.D. is licensed CC BY-SA 2.0

This methodology focuses on taking an initial idea and developing a minimum viable product (MVP). The MVP is a working software application with just enough functionality to demonstrate the idea behind the project. Once the MVP is developed, it is given to potential users for review. Feedback on the MVP is generated in two forms: (1) direct observation and discussion with the users, and (2) usage statistics gathered from the software itself. Using these two forms of feedback, the team determines whether they should continue in the same direction or rethink the project's core idea, change the functions, or create a new MVP. This change in strategy is called a pivot. Several iterations of the MVP are developed, with new functions added each time based on the feedback, until a final product is completed.

The biggest difference between the lean methodology and the other methodologies is that the system's full set of requirements is unknown when the project is launched. As each iteration of the project is released, the statistics and feedback gathered are used to determine the requirements. The lean methodology works best in an entrepreneurial environment where a company is interested in determining if their idea for a software application is worth developing.

References:

Manifesto for Agile Software Development (2001). Retrieved December 10, 2020, from http://agilemanifesto.org/

The Lean Startup. Retrieved on December 9, 2020, from http://theleanstartup.com/

This page titled 10.2: Systems Development Life Cycle (SDLC) Model is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **10.2: Systems Development Life Cycle (SDLC) Model** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

10.3: Software Development

Software Development

Many of the methodologies discussed above are used to manage software development since programming is complex, and sometimes errors are hard to detect. We learned in chapter 2 that software is created via programming, and programming is the process of creating a set of logical instructions for a digital device to follow using a programming language. The programming process is sometimes called “coding” because the syntax of a programming language is not in a form that everyone can understand – it is in “code.”

The process of developing good software is usually not as simple as sitting down and writing some code. True, sometimes a programmer can quickly write a short program to solve a need. But most of the time, the creation of software is a resource-intensive process that involves several different groups of people in an organization. In the following sections, we are going to review several different methodologies for software development.

Sidebar: The project management quality triangle

When developing software or any product or service, there is tension between the developers and the different stakeholder groups, such as management, users, and investors. Fig. 10.5 illustrates the tension of the three requirements: time, cost, and quality that project managers need to make tradeoffs in. From how quickly the software can be developed (time), to how much money will be spent (cost), to how well it will be built (quality). The quality triangle is a simple concept. It states that you can only address two of the following: time, cost, and quality for any product or service being developed.

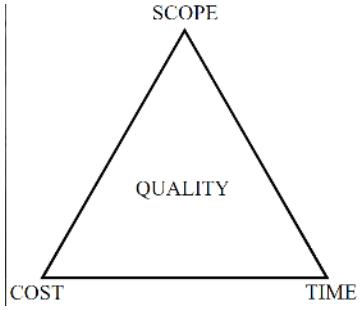


Fig 10.6 Project Management Quality Triangle. Image by Mapto is licensed Public domain

So what does it mean that you can only address two of the three? It means that the finished product's quality depends on the three variables: scope, schedule, and the allocated budget. Changes in any of these three variables affect the other two, hence, the quality.

For example, if a feature is added, but no additional time is added to the schedule to develop and test, the code's quality may suffer, even if more money is added. There are times when it is not even feasible to make the tradeoff. For example, adding more people to a project where members are so overwhelmed that they don’t have time to manage or train new people. Overall, this model helps us understand the tradeoffs we must make when developing new products and services.

Programming Languages

One of the important decisions that a project team needs to make is to decide which programming language(s) are to be used and associated tools in the development process. As mentioned in chapter 3, software developers create software using one of several programming languages. A programming language is a formal language that provides a way for a programmer to create structured code to communicate logic in a format that the computer hardware can execute. Over the past few decades, many different programming languages have evolved to meet many different needs.

There is no one way to categorize the languages. Still, they are often grouped by type (i.e., query, scripting), or chronologically by year when it was introduced (i.,e. Fortran was introduced in 1954s), by their “generation,” by how it was translated to the machine code, or how it was executed. We will discuss a few categories in this chapter.

Generations of Programming Languages

Early languages were specific to the type of hardware that had to be programmed; each type of computer hardware had a different low-level programming language (in fact, even today, there are differences at the lower level, though higher-level programming languages now obscure them). In these early languages, precise instructions had to be entered line by line – a tedious process.

Some common characteristics are summarized below to illustrate some differences among these generations:

	First-generation (1GL)	Second-generation (2GL)	Third-generation (3GL)	Fourth-generation (4GL)	Fifth-generation (5GL)
Time introduced (est).	1940s or earlier	1950s	1950s-1970s	1970s-1990s	1980s-1900s
Instructions	They are made of binary numbers of 0s and 1s	Use a set of syntax that is readable by human and programmers	The syntax is more structured and is made up of more human-like language	The syntax is friendly to non-programmers	Still in progress.
Category	Machine dependent Machine code	Machine dependent Low level, Assembly Languages	Machine independent High Level	Machine independent High-level abstraction, Advanced 3GLs	Logic programming
Advantage	Very fast, no need for 'translation' to 0s and 1s	Code can be read and written by programmers easier than learning machine code	More machine-independent More friendly to programmers General-purpose	Easy to learn	May not need programmers to write programs
Disadvantage	Machine dependent, not portable	Must be converted to machine code, still machine-dependent	May go multiple steps to translate to machine code	More specialized	Still early in the adoption phase
Today's usage	If needed to interact with hardware directly such as drivers (i.e., USB driver)	If needed to interact with hardware directly such as drivers (i.e., USB driver)	Modern 3GLs are more commonly used. Early 3GLs are used to maintain existing business programs or scientific programs	Database, web development	Limited Visual tools, Artificial intelligence research
Examples	Machine language	Assembly language	Early 3GLs: COBOL, Fortran Modern 3PLs: C, C++, Java, Javascript	Perl, PhP, Python, SQL, Ruby	Mercury, OPS5

Statista.com reported that by early 2020, Javascript was the most used language among developers worldwide. To see the complete list, please visit Statista.com for more details.

Sidebar: Examples of languages

First-generation language: machine code. In machine code, programming is done by directly setting actual ones and zeroes (the bits) using binary code. Here is an example program that

adds 1234 and 4321 using machine language:

10111001	00000000
11010010	10100001
00000100	00000000
10001001	00000000
00001110	10001011
00000000	00011110
00000000	00011110
00000000	00000010
10111001	00000000
11100001	00000011
00010000	11000011
10001001	10100011
00001110	00000100
00000010	00000000

Second-generation language. Assembly language gives English-like phrases to the machine-code instructions, making it easier to program. An assembly-language program must be run through an assembler, which converts it into machine code. Here is an example program that adds 1234 and 4321 using assembly language:

MOV CX,1234 MOV DS:[0],CX MOV CX,4321 MOV AX,DS:[0]

MOV BX,DS:[2] ADD AX,BX

MOV DS:[4],AX

Third-generation languages are not specific to the type of hardware they run and are much more like spoken languages. Most third-generation languages must be compiled, a process that converts them into machine code. Well-known third-generation languages include BASIC, C, Pascal, and Java. Here is an example using BASIC:

A=1234 B=4321 C=A+B END

Fourth-generation languages are a class of programming tools that enable fast application development using intuitive interfaces and environments. Many times, a fourth-generation language has a particular purpose, such as database interaction or report-writing. These tools can be used by those with very little formal training in programming and allow for the quick development of applications and/or functionality. Examples of fourth-generation languages include Clipper, FOCUS, FoxPro, SQL, and SPSS.

Why would anyone want to program in a lower-level language when they require so much more work? The answer is similar to why some prefer to drive stick-shift automobiles instead of automatic transmission: control and efficiency. Lower-level languages, such as assembly language, are much more efficient and execute much more quickly. You have finer control over the hardware as well. Sometimes, a combination of higher- and lower-level languages is mixed together to get the best of both worlds: the programmer will create the overall structure and interface using a higher-level language but will use lower-level languages wherever in the program that requires more precision.

Compiled vs. Interpreted

Besides classifying a programming language based on its generation, it can also be classified as compiled or interpreted language. As we have learned, a computer language is written in a human-readable form. In a compiled language, the program code is translated into a machine-readable form called an executable that can be run on the hardware. Some well-known compiled languages include C, C++, and COBOL.

An interpreted language requires a runtime program to be installed to execute. This runtime program then interprets the program code line by line and runs it. Interpreted languages are generally easier to work with but are slower and require more system resources. Examples of popular interpreted languages include BASIC, PHP, PERL, and Python. The web languages such as HTML and Javascript would also be considered interpreted because they require a browser to run.

The Java programming language is an interesting exception to this classification, as it is actually a hybrid of the two. A program written in Java is partially compiled to create a program that can be understood by the Java Virtual Machine (JVM). Each type of operating system has its own JVM, which must be installed, allowing Java programs to run on many different types of operating systems.

Procedural vs. Object-Oriented

A procedural programming language is designed to allow a programmer to define a specific starting point for the program and then execute sequentially. All early programming languages worked this way. As user interfaces became more interactive and graphical, it made sense for programming languages to evolve to allow the user to define the program's flow. The object-oriented programming language is set up to define “objects” that can take certain actions based on user input. In other words, a procedural program focuses on the sequence of activities to be performed; an object-oriented program focuses on the different items being manipulated.

For example, in a human-resources system, an “EMPLOYEE” object would be needed. If the program needed to retrieve or set data regarding an employee, it would first create an employee object in the program and then set or retrieve the values needed. Every object has properties, which are descriptive fields associated with the object. In the example below, an employee object has the properties “Name,” “Employee number,” “Birthdate,” and “Date of hire.” An object also has “methods,” which can take actions related to the object. In the example, there are two methods. The first is “ComputePay(),” which will return the current amount owed to the employee. The second is “ListEmployees(),” which will retrieve a list of employees who report to this employee.

Employee Object

Object: EMPLOYEE
First_Name Last_Name Employee_ID Birthdate Date_of_hire
ComputePay() ListEmployees()

Programming Tools

Another decision that needs to be made during the development of an IS is the set of tools needed to write programs. To write programs, programmers need tools to enter code, check for the code's syntax, and some method to translate their code into machine code. To be more efficient at programming, programmers use integrated tools such as an integrated development environment (IDE) or computer-aided software-engineering (CASE) tools.

Integrated Development Environment (IDE)

For most programming languages, an IDE can be used. An IDE provides various tools for the programmer, all in one place with a consistent user interface. IDE usually includes:

- an editor for writing the program that will color-code or highlight keywords from the programming language;

- a help system that gives detailed documentation regarding the programming language;
- a compiler/interpreter, which will allow the programmer to run the program;
- a debugging tool, which will provide the programmer details about the execution of the program to resolve problems in the code; and
- a check-in/check-out mechanism allows a team of programmers to work together on a project and not write over each other's code changes.

Statista.com reports that 80% of software developers worldwide from 2018 and 2019 use a source code collaboration tool such as GitHub, 77% use a standalone IDE such as Eclipse, 69% use Microsoft Visual Studio. For a complete list, please visit statista.com.

Computer-aided software engineering (CASE) Tools

While an IDE provides several tools to assist the programmer in writing the program, the code still must be written. Computer-aided software engineering (CASE) tools allow a designer to develop software with little or no programming. Instead, the CASE tool writes the code for the designer. CASE tools come in many varieties, but their goal is to generate quality code based on the designer's input.

Build vs. Buy or Subscribe

When an organization decides that a new software program needs to be developed, they must determine if it makes more sense to build it themselves or purchase it from an outside company. This is the "build vs. buy" decision. This 'buy' decision now includes the option to subscribe instead of buying it outright.

There are many advantages to purchasing software from an outside company. First, it is generally less expensive to purchase a software package than to build it. Second, when a software package is purchased, it is available much more quickly than if the package is built in-house. Third, companies or consumers pay a one-time price and get to keep the software for as long as the license allows and could be as long as you own it or even after the vendor stops supporting it. Software applications can take months or years to build; a purchased package can be up and running within a month. A purchased package has already been tested, and many of the bugs have already been worked out, and additional support contracts can be purchased. It is the role of a systems integrator to make various purchased systems and the existing systems at the organization work together.

There are also disadvantages to purchasing software. First, the same software you are using can be used by your competitors. If a company is trying to differentiate itself based on a business process in that purchased software, it will have a hard time doing so if its competitors use the same software. Another disadvantage to purchasing software is the process of customization. If you purchase a software package from a vendor and then customize it, you will have to manage those customizations every time the vendor provides an upgrade. With the rise of security and privacy, companies may lack the in-house expertise to respond quickly. Installing various updates and dealing with bugs encountered may also be a burden to IT staff and users. This can become an administrative headache.

A hybrid solution is to subscribe. Subscribe means that instead of selling products individually, vendors now offer a subscription model that the users can rent and pay periodically, such as monthly, yearly. The renting model has been used in many other industries such as movies, books and recently has moved into high tech industries. Companies and consumers can now subscribe to almost everything, as we discussed in earlier chapters, from additional storage in your email platforms such as Google Drive or Microsoft Onedrive, to software such as Quickbooks, Microsoft Office 365, to hosting and web support services such as Amazon AWS. Vendors benefit from converting one-time sales to recurring sales and increase customer loyalty. Customers benefit from the headache of installing updates, having the software support and updates taken care of automatically, knowing that the software continues to be updated with new features. A subscription model is now a prevalent option for both consumers and businesses.

Even if an organization determines to buy or subscribe, it still makes sense to go through many of the same analyses to compare the costs and benefits of building it themselves. This is an important decision that could have a long-term strategic impact on the organization.

Web Services

Chapter 3 stated that the move to cloud computing has allowed software to be looked at as a service. One option companies have these days to license functions provided by other companies instead of writing the code themselves. These are called web services,

and they can greatly simplify the addition of functionality to a website.

For example, suppose a company wishes to provide a map showing the location of someone who has called their support line. By utilizing Google Maps API web services, they can build a Google Map right into their application. Or a shoe company could make it easier for its retailers to sell shoes online by providing a shoe-size web service that the retailers could embed right into their website.

Web services can blur the lines between "build vs. buy." Companies can choose to build a software application themselves but then purchase functionality from vendors to supplement their system.

End-User Computing or Shadow IT

In many organizations, application development is not limited to the programmers and analysts in the information-technology department. Especially in larger organizations, other departments develop their own department-specific applications. The people who build these are not necessarily trained in programming or application development, but they tend to be adept with computers. A person, for example, who is skilled in a particular software package, such as a spreadsheet or database package, may be called upon to build smaller applications for use by his or her own department. This phenomenon is referred to as end-user development, or end-user computing, or shadow IT.

End-user computing can have many advantages for an organization. First, it brings the development of applications closer to those who will use them. Because IT departments are sometimes quite backlogged, it also provides a means to have software created more quickly. Many organizations encourage end-user computing to reduce the strain on the IT department.

End-user computing does have its disadvantages as well. If departments within an organization are

developing their own applications, the organization may end up with several applications that perform similar functions, which is inefficient since it duplicated effort. Sometimes, these different versions of the same application provide different results, bringing confusion when departments interact. These applications are often developed by someone with little or no formal training in programming. In these cases, the software developed can have problems that have to be resolved by the IT department. End-user computing can be beneficial to an organization, but it should be managed. The IT department should set guidelines and provide tools for the departments who want to create their own solutions.

Communication between departments will go a long way towards the successful use of end-user computing.

Sidebar: Building a Mobile App

Software development typically includes building applications to run on desktops, servers, or mainframes. However, the web's commercialization has created additional software development categories such as web design, content development, web server. Web-related development effort for the internet is now called web development. Earlier web development activities include building websites to support businesses or to build e-commerce systems and have made technologies such as HTML very popular with web designers and programming languages such as Perl, Python, Java popular for programmers. Pre-packaged websites are now available for consumers to purchase without learning HTML or hiring a web designer. For example, entrepreneurs who want to start a bakery business can now buy a pre-build website with a shopping cart, all ready to start a business without incurring costly expenses to build it themselves.

With the rise of mobile phones, a new type of software development called mobile app development came into being. Statista.com forecasts that Mobile apps revenues will increase significantly from $98B in 2014 to over $935B by 2023. This means that the need for mobile app developers has also increased.

In many ways, building an application for a mobile device is the same as building an application for a traditional computer. Understanding the application requirements, designing the interface, working with users – all of these steps still need to be carried out. The decision process to pick the right programming languages and tools remains the same.

However, there are specific differences that programmers must consider in building apps for mobile devices. They are:

- The user interface must vary to adapt to different screen size
- The use of fingers as pointers or to type in text instead of keyboard and mouse on the desktop

- Specific requirements from the OS vendor must be met for the app to be included in each store (i.e., Apple's App Store or Android's Play Store)
- The integration with the desktop or the cloud to synch up data
- Tight integration with other built-in hardware such as cameras, biometric or motion sensors.
- Less available memory, storage space, and processing power

Mobile apps are now available for just about everything and continue to grow.

References:

Javascript was the most used language among developers worldwide (2020). Retrieved December 10, 2020, from Satistica.com

Google Maps Platform Documentation. Retrieved December 10, 2020, from https://developers.google.com/maps/documentation

Programming/development tools used by software developers worldwide from 2018 and 2019 (2020). Retrieved December 10, 2020, from Statista.com

Worldwide mobile app revenues in 2014 to 2023 (2010.) Retrieved December 10, 2020, from Statista.com

---

This page titled 10.3: Software Development is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **10.3: Software Development** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

10.4: Implementation Methodologies

Implementation Methodologies

Once a new system is developed (or purchased), the organization must determine the best method for implementing it. Convincing a group of people to learn and use a new system can be a challenging process. Using the new software and the business processes it gives rise to can have far-reaching effects within the organization.

There are several different methodologies an organization can adopt to implement a new system. Four of the most popular are listed below.

- **Direct cutover**. In the direct-cutover implementation methodology, the organization selects a particular date that the old system will not be used anymore. On that date, the users begin using the new system, and the old system is unavailable. The advantages of using this methodology are that it is speedy and the least expensive. However, this method is the riskiest as well. If the new system has an operational problem or is not properly prepared, it could prove disastrous for the organization.
- **Pilot implementation**. In this methodology, a subset of the organization (called a pilot group) starts using the new system before the rest of the organization. This has a smaller impact on the company and allows the support team to focus on a smaller group of individuals.
- **Parallel operation**. With the parallel operation, the old and new systems are used simultaneously for a limited period of time. This method is the least risky because the old system is still being used while the new system is essentially being tested. However, this is the most expensive methodology since work is duplicated and support is needed for both systems in full.
- **Phased implementation**. In a phased implementation, different functions of the new application are used as functions from the old system are turned off. This approach allows an organization to move from one system to another slowly.

These implementation methodologies depend on the complexity and importance of the old and new systems.

Change Management

As new systems are brought online, and old systems are phased out, it becomes important to manage how change is implemented. Change should never be introduced in a vacuum. The organization should be sure to communicate proposed changes before they happen and plan to minimize the impact of the change that will occur after implementation. Training and incorporating users' feedback are critical to increasing user's acceptance of the new system. Without gaining the user's acceptance, the risk of failure is very high. Change management is a critical component of IT oversight.

Maintenance

Once a new system has been introduced, it enters the maintenance phase. In this phase, the system is in production and is being used by the organization. While the system is no longer actively being developed, changes need to be made when bugs are found, or new features are requested. During the maintenance phase, IT management must ensure that the system continues to stay aligned with business priorities, has a clear process to accept requests, problem reports, deploy updates to ensure user's satisfaction with continuous improvements in the product's quality.

With the rise of privacy concerns, many companies now add policies about maintaining their customers' data or data collected during the project. Policies such as when to dispose of, how to dispose of, where to store are just a few examples.

This page titled 10.4: Implementation Methodologies is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **10.4: Implementation Methodologies** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

10.5: Summary

Developing an IS can be costly and a complex process to manage a group of professionals to deliver a new system on time and budget. There are several development models from the formal SDLC process to more informal processes such as agile programming or lean methodologies to provide a framework to manage all the phases from start to finish.

Software development is about so much more than programming. Programming languages have evolved from very low-level machine-specific languages to higher-level languages that allow a programmer to write software for a wide variety of machines. Most programmers work with software development tools that provide them with integrated components to make the software development process more efficient.

For some organizations, building their own software applications does not make the most sense; instead, they choose to purchase or rent software built by a third party to save development costs and speed implementation. In end-user computing, software development happens outside the information technology department. When implementing new software applications, organizations need to consider several different types of implementation methodologies.

An organization's responsibilities to complete a software development do not end with the deployment of the software. It now includes a clear and systemic process to maintain and protect customers' and projects' data to address security and privacy concerns.

This page titled 10.5: Summary is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **10.5: Summary** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

10.6: Study Questions

Study Questions

1. What are the steps in the SDLC methodology?
2. What is RAD software development?
3. What is the Waterfall model?
4. What makes the lean methodology unique?
5. What is the difference between the Waterfall and Agile models?
6. What is a sprint?
7. What are three differences between second-generation and third-generation languages?
8. Why would an organization consider building its own software application if it is cheaper to buy one?
9. What is the difference between the pilot implementation methodology and the parallel implementation methodology?
10. What is change management?
11. What are the four different implementation methodologies?

Exercises

1. Which software-development methodology would be best if an organization needed to develop a software tool for a small group of users in the marketing department? Why? Which implementation methodology should they use? Why?
2. Doing your own research, find three programming languages and categorize them in these areas: generation, compiled vs. interpreted, procedural vs. object-oriented.
3. Some argue that HTML is not a programming language. Doing your own research, find three arguments for why it is not a programming language and three arguments for why it is.
4. Read more about responsive design using the link given in the text. Provide the links to three websites that use responsive design and explain how they demonstrate responsive-design behavior.
5. Research the criteria and cost to put a mobile app into Apple's App Store. Write a report.
6. Research to find out what elements to use to estimate the cost to build an app. Write a report.

This page titled 10.6: Study Questions is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **10.6: Study Questions** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

10.7: Summary

This page titled 10.7: Summary is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

SECTION OVERVIEW

3: Information Systems Beyond the Organization

11: Information Systems Beyond the Organization

11.1: Introduction
11.2: The Global Firm
11.3: The Digital Divide
11.4: Summary
11.5: Study Questions

12: The Ethical and Legal Implications of Information System

12.1: Introduction
12.2: Intellectual Property
12.3: The Digital Millennium Copyright Act
12.4: Summary
12.5: Study Questions

13: Future Trends in Information Systems

13.1: Introduction
13.2: Collaborative
13.3: Internet of Things (IoT)
13.4: Future of Information Systems
13.5: Study Questions

This page titled 3: Information Systems Beyond the Organization is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

11: Information Systems Beyond the Organization

Learning Objectives

Upon successful completion of this chapter, you will be able to:

- Explain the concept of globalization;
- Describe the role of information technology in globalization;
- Identify the issues experienced by firms as they face a global economy; and
- Define the digital divide and explain Nielsen's three stages of the digital divide.

The rapid rise of the Internet has made it easier than ever to do business worldwide. This chapter will look at the impact that the Internet is having on the globalization of business. Firms will need to manage challenges and leverage opportunities due to globalization and digitalization. It will discuss the digital divide concept, what steps have been taken to date to alleviate it, and what more needs to be done.

11.1: Introduction

11.2: The Global Firm

11.3: The Digital Divide

11.4: Summary

11.5: Study Questions

This page titled 11: Information Systems Beyond the Organization is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

11.1: Introduction

In this chapter, we will look at how the internet has opened the world to globalization. We will look at where it began and fast forward to where we are today. We will be reviewing the influences of man, machine, and technology that enables globalization. It is now just as simple to communicate with someone on the other side of the world as to talk to someone next door. In this chapter, we will look at the implications of globalization and its impact on the world.

What Is Globalization?

Globalization is found in economics and refers to the integration of goods, services, and culture among the people and nations of the world. Globalization has accelerated since the turn of the 18th century due to mass improvement in transportation and technology. Globalization has its roots as far back as an exploration of finding the New World. Globalization creates world markets. Places that were once limited to only providing goods and services to the immediate area now have open access to other countries worldwide. The expansion of global markets has increased economic activities in the exchange of goods, services, and funds, which has created global markets that are now readily feasible. Today the ease of the connectivity of people has accelerated the speed of globalization. People no longer have to sail for a year to share goods or services.

Fig. 11.1 Globalization in Handshake, Hands, Laptop, Monitor. Image by Gerd Altmann is licensed CC BY-SA 2.0

The internet has connected nations together. From its initial beginnings in the United States in the 1970s to the World Wide Web development, it has crept into home use with the introduction of the personal computer by the 1980s. The 90's then introduced social networks and e-commerce of today; the Internet has continued to increase the integration between countries, making globalization a fact of life for citizens worldwide. The Internet is truly a worldwide phenomenon. By Q3 of 2020, approximately 4.9 billion people, or more than half of the world's population, use the internet. For more details, please view the data at internetworldstats.com/stats.htm.

WORLD INTERNET USAGE AND POPULATION STATISTICS
2020 Year-Q3 Estimates

World Regions	Population (2020 Est.)	Population % of World	Internet Users 30 Sept 2020	Penetration Rate (% Pop.)	Growth 2000-2020	Internet World %
Africa	1,340,598,447	17.2 %	631,940,772	47.1 %	13,898 %	12.8 %
Asia	4,294,516,659	55.1 %	2,555,636,255	59.5 %	2,136 %	51.8 %
Europe	834,995,197	10.7 %	727,848,547	87.2 %	593 %	14.8 %
Latin America / Caribbean	654,287,232	8.4 %	467,817,332	71.5 %	2,489 %	9.5 %
Middle East	260,991,690	3.3 %	184,856,813	70.8 %	5,527 %	3.7 %
North America	368,869,647	4.7 %	332,908,868	90.3 %	208 %	6.8 %
Oceania / Australia	42,690,838	0.5 %	28,917,600	67.7 %	279 %	0.6 %
WORLD TOTAL	7,796,949,710	100.0 %	4,929,926,187	63.2 %	1,266 %	100.0 %

NOTES: (1) Internet Usage and World Population Statistics estimates are for October 20, 2020. (2) CLICK on each world region name for detailed regional usage information. (3) Demographic (Population) numbers are based on data from the United Nations Population Division. (4) Internet usage information comes from data published by Nielsen Online, by the International Telecommunications Union, by GfK, by local ICT Regulators and other reliable sources. (5) For definitions, navigation help and disclaimers, please refer to the Website Surfing Guide. (6) The information from this website may be cited, giving the due credit and placing a link back to www.internetworldstats.com. Copyright © 2020, Miniwatts Marketing Group. All rights reserved worldwide.

Fig 11.2 - World Internet Usage and Population Statistics. Source: https://internetworldstats.com/stats.htm

The Network Society

In 1996, social-sciences researcher Manuel Castells published The Rise of the Network Society. He identified new ways to organize economic activity around the networks that the new telecommunication technologies have provided. This new, global economic activity was different from the past because "it is an economy with the capacity to work as a unit in real-time on a planetary scale." (Castells, 2000) We are now into this network society, where we are all connected on a global scale.

The World Is Flat

In Thomas Friedman's seminal book, The World Is Flat (Friedman, 2005), he unpacks the impacts that the personal computer, the Internet, and communication software have had on business, specifically its impact on globalization. He begins the book by defining the three eras of globalization:

- " Globalization 1.0″ occurred from 1492 until about 1800. In this era, globalization was centered around countries. It was about how much horsepower, wind power, and steam power a country had and how creatively it was deployed. The world shrank from size "large" to size "medium."
- " Globalization 2.0″ occurred from about 1800 until 2000, interrupted only by the two World Wars. In this era, the dynamic force driving change was multinational companies. The world shrank from size "medium" to size "small."
- "Globalization 3.0″ is our current era, beginning in the year 2000. The convergence of the personal computer, fiber-optic Internet connections, and software has created a "flat-world platform" that allows small groups and even individuals to go global. The world has shrunk from size "small" to size "tiny."

According to Friedman (2005), this third era of globalization was brought about, in many respects, by information technology. Some of the specific technologies he lists include:

- The graphical user interface for the personal computer popularized in the late 1980s. Before the graphical user interface, using a computer was relatively difficult. By making the personal computer something that anyone could use, it became commonplace very quickly. Friedman points out that this digital storage of content made people much more productive and, as the Internet evolved, made it simpler to communicate content worldwide.
- The build-out of the Internet infrastructure during the dot-com boom during the late-1990s. During the late 1990s, telecommunications companies laid thousands of miles of fiber-optic cable worldwide, turning network communications into a commodity. At the same time, the Internet protocols, such as SMTP (e-mail), HTML (web pages), and TCP/IP (network communications), became standards that were available for free and used by everyone.
- The introduction of software to automate and integrate business processes. As the Internet continued to grow and become the dominant form of communication, it became essential to build on the standards developed earlier so that the websites and applications running on the Internet would work well together. Friedman calls this "workflow software," by which he means software that allows people to work together more easily and allows different software packages and databases to integrate easily. Examples include payment-processing systems and shipping calculators.

These three technologies came together in the late 1990s to create a "platform for global collaboration." Once these technologies were in place, they continued to evolve. Friedman also points out a couple more technologies that have contributed to the flat-world platform – the open-source movement (see chapter 10) and the advent of mobile technologies.

The World Is Flat was published in 2005. Since then, we have seen even more growth in information technologies that have contributed to global collaborations. We will discuss current and future trends in chapter 13.

References

Castells, Manuel (2000). The Rise of the Network Society (2nd ed.). Blackwell Publishers, Inc., Cambridge, MA, USA.

Friedman, T. L. (2005). The world is flat: A brief history of the twenty-first century. New York: Farrar, Straus and Giroux.

Q3 2020 Internet usage. Retrieved December 5, 2020, from https://internetworldstats.com/stats.htm.

This page titled 11.1: Introduction is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **11.1: Introduction** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

11.2: The Global Firm

The Global Firm

The new era of globalization allows any business to become international. By accessing this new platform of technologies or network, Castells' vision (Castells, 2000) of working as a unit in real-time on a planetary scale can be a reality. He believed the collective could benefit society. Some of the advantages of this include the following:

- **Access to expertise and labor around the world**. Organizations are no longer being limited by viable candidates locally and can now hire people from the global labor pool. This also allows organizations to pay a lower labor cost for the same work based on the prevailing wage in different countries.
- **Operate 24 hours a day**. With employees in different time zones worldwide, an organization can literally operate around the clock, handing off work on projects from one part of the world to another. Businesses can also keep their digital storefront (their website) open all the time.
- **Access to a larger market for firm products**. Once a product is being sold online, it is available for purchase from a worldwide consumer base. Even if a company's products do not appeal beyond its own country's borders, being online has also made the product more visible to consumers within that country.
- **Achieve a diversity of the market**. It helps companies to stabilize their overall revenue sources. The company could be experiencing a gain in revenues in one country and be down the other side of the world, which will help to stabilize their revenues.
- **Gain more exposure to foreign investment opportunities.** Globalization helps companies to become more familiar with opportunities in the new areas that they are expanding into.

To fully take advantage of these new capabilities, companies need to understand that there are also challenges in dealing with employees, customers from different cultures, and other countries' economies. Some of these challenges include:

- **Infrastructure differences**. Each country has its own infrastructure, many of which are not of the same quality as the US infrastructure. Americans are currently getting around 135 Mbps of download speed and 52 Mbps of upload speed through their fixed broadband connections — good for eighth in the world and around double the global average. For every South Korea (16 average speed), there is an Egypt (0.83 MBps) or an India (0.82 MBps). A business cannot depend on every country it deals with having the same Internet speeds. See the sidebar called "How Does My Internet Speed Compare?"
- **Labor laws and regulations**. Different countries (including the United States) have different laws and regulations. A company that wants to hire employees from other countries must understand the different regulations and concerns.
- **Legal restrictions**. Many countries have restrictions on what can be sold or how a product can be advertised. A business needs to understand what is allowed. For example, in Germany, it is illegal to sell anything Nazi-related; in China, it is illegal to put anything sexually suggestive online.
- **Language, customs, and preferences**. Every country has its own (or several) unique culture(s), which a business must consider when trying to market a product. Additionally, different countries have different preferences. For example, in some parts of the world, people prefer to eat their french fries with mayonnaise instead of ketchup; in other parts of the world, specific hand gestures (such as the thumbs-up) are offensive.
- **International shipping**. Shipping products between countries promptly can be challenging. Inconsistent address formats, dishonest customs agents, and prohibitive shipping costs are all factors that must be considered when trying to deliver products internationally.
- **Volatility of currency**. This could occur when you are buying or selling goods, the currency has big fluctuations in value when converting to a different countries' currency, such as the euro, yen, and dollar.

Because of these challenges, many businesses choose not to expand globally, either for labor or for customers. Whether a business has its own website or relies on a third party, such as Amazon or eBay, the question of whether to globalize must be carefully considered.

Globalization has changed greatly in the last several decades. It has seen positive development, with associated costs and benefits such as organizations have seen its fortune changed and progress and modernization are brought into various parts of the world. However, its benefits are not necessarily evenly distributed across the world. With the global pandemic of 2020 (Covid-19),

globalization is now viewed by many as risks to the national supply chain of goods and services, job losses, increased gap of inequality, and health risks. It is expected that globalization post-Covid will need to mitigate these risks to move it to a more balanced approach between independence and integration between countries (Kobrin, 2020).

Sidebar: How Does My Internet Speed Compare?

Internet speed varies by geographies, such as states and countries, as reported by Statista.com. For example, as of August 2020, Singapore's internet speed is ~218 Mbps, while Hungary is ~156 Mbps. Please visit Statista.com for more details.

Statista.com also reported that as of June 2020, over 42% of US households did not know the download speed of their household internet service. The download speed varies from 10 Mbps or less to over 100 Mbps. There are several free tools that you can use to test your household internet upload and download speed, such as the app Speedtest, a free download (as of this writing).

References

Castells, Manuel (2000). The Rise of the Network Society (2nd ed.). Blackwell Publishers, Inc., Cambridge, MA, USA.

Kobrin, S.J (2020). How globalization became a thing that goes bump in the night. J Int Bus Policy 3, 280–286. https://doi.org/10.1057/s42214-020-00060-y

Statista. (2020). Countries with the fastest average fixed broadband internet speeds as of August 2020 (in Mbps). Retrieved December 5, 2020, from https://www.statista.com/statistics/896772/countries-fastest-average-fixed-broadband-internet-speeds/.

Statista. (2020). Household internet download speed of adults in the United States as of June 2020. Retrieved December 5, 2020, from https://www.statista.com/statistics/368545/us-state-high-speed-internet-households/.

This page titled 11.2: The Global Firm is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **11.2: The Global Firm** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

11.3: The Digital Divide

The Digital Divide

As the Internet continues to make inroads across the world, it also creates a separation between those who have access to this global network and those who do not. This separation is called the “digital divide” and is of great concern. Kilburn (2005) summarizes this concern in his article Crossroads:

Adopted by the ACM Council in 1992, the ACM Code of Ethics and Professional Conduct focuses on issues involving the Digital Divide that could prevent certain categories of people - those from low-income households, senior citizens, single-parent children, the undereducated, minorities, and residents of rural areas — from receiving adequate access to the wide variety of resources offered by computer technology. This Code of Ethics positions the use of computers as a fundamental ethical consideration: “In a fair society, all individuals would have equal opportunity to participate in, or benefit from, the use of computer resources regardless of race, sex, religion, age, disability, national origin, or other similar factors.” The article discusses the digital divide in various forms and analyzes reasons for the growing inequality in people’s access to Internet services. It also describes how society can bridge the digital divide: the serious social gap between information “haves” and “have-nots.”

The digital divide is categorized into three stages: the economic divide, the usability divide, and the empowerment divide (Nielson, 2006)

- **The economic divide** is usually called the digital divide: it means that some people can afford to have a computer and Internet access while others cannot. Because of Moore’s Law (see chapter 2), the price of hardware has continued to drop, and, at this point, we can now access digital technologies, such as smartphones, for very little. This fact, Nielsen asserts, means that the economic divide is a moot point for all intents and purposes, and we should not focus our resources on solving it.
- **The usability divide** is concerned with the fact that “technology remains so complicated that many people couldn’t use a computer even if they got one for free.” And even for those who can use a computer, accessing all the benefits of having one is beyond their understanding. Included in this group are those with low literacy and seniors. According to Nielsen, we know how to help these users, but we are not doing it because there is little profit.
- **The empowerment divide** is the most difficult to solve. It is concerned with how we use technology to empower ourselves. Very few users truly understand the power that digital technologies can give them. In his article, Nielsen explains that his (and others’) research has shown that very few users contribute content to the Internet, use the advanced search, or even distinguish paid search ads from organic search results. Many people will limit what they can do online by accepting the basic, default settings of their computer and not understanding how they can truly be empowered.

Understanding the digital divide using these three stages provides an approach to developing solutions and monitoring our progress in bridging the digital divide gap.

The digital divide can occur between countries, regions, or even neighborhoods. There are pockets with little or no Internet access in many US cities, while just a few miles away, high-speed broadband is common. For example, in 2020, the US Federal Communications Commission (FCC) reports that “In urban areas, 97% of Americans have access to high-speed fixed service. In rural areas, that number falls to 65%. And on Tribal lands, barely 60% have access. All told, nearly 30 million Americans cannot reap the benefits of the digital age.” Overall, Statista.com reported that as of August 2020, only ~85% of the US population has internet access.

The global pandemic (Covid-19) has made Internet access an essential requirement due to the social distance or lockdown mandates and has spotlighted this issue globally.

Challenges and efforts to bridge the Digital Divide gap

Solutions to the digital divide have had mixed success over the years. Initial effort focused on providing internet access and/or computing devices with some degrees of success. However, just providing Internet access and/or computing devices is not enough to bring true Internet access to a country, region, or neighborhood.

The Worldbank and International Monetary Fund (IMF), in their annual meeting in 2020, brought together global leaders and private innovators to discuss how to bridge the digital gap globally. Three challenges were identified:

1. Lack of infrastructure remains a major barrier to connectivity

2. Greater collaboration is needed between the public and private sectors
3. Education and training to help connect people in underserved communities

In June 2020, the UN Secretary-General stated that Digital Divide is now 'a Matter of Life and Death' amid the COVID-19 Crisis and called on global leaders for global cooperation to meet the goal: every person has safe and affordable access to the Internet by 2030.

With this challenge being made acute due to the global pandemic of 2020 (Covid-19), many leaders have increased their investment to bridge this gap in their countries. For example, the IMF reported that countries like Kenya, Ghana, Rwanda, and Tanzania had made great progress in using mobile to connect their citizens to financial systems (IMF, 2020). Many states in the United States have increased their funding through public or private partnerships, such as the California Closing the Divide initiative (CA dept of education, 2020).

Continued global investment to bridge this gap remains a critical need for the global world, both during and post-global pandemic.

Sidebar: Using Gaming to Bridge the Digital Divide

Paul Kim, the Assistant Dean and Chief Technology Officer of the Stanford Graduate School of Education, designed a project to address the digital divide for children in developing countries (Kim et al., 2011.) In their project, the researchers wanted to understand if children can adopt and teach themselves mobile learning technology without help from teachers or other adults and the processes and factors involved in this phenomenon. The researchers developed a mobile device called TeacherMate, which contained a game designed to help children learn math. The unique part of this research was that the researchers interacted directly with the children; they did not channel the mobile devices through the teachers or the schools. Another important factor to consider: to understand the context of the children's educational environment, the researchers began the project by working with parents and local nonprofits six months before their visit. While the results of this research are too detailed to go into here, it can be said that the researchers found that children can, indeed, adopt and teach themselves mobile learning technologies.

What makes this research so interesting when thinking about the digital divide is that the researchers found that, to be effective, they had to customize their technology and tailor their implementation to the specific group they were trying to reach. One of their conclusions stated the following:

Considering the rapid advancement of technology today, mobile learning options for future projects will only increase. Consequently, researchers must continue to investigate their impact; we believe there is a specific need for more in-depth studies on ICT [information and communication technology] design variations to meet different localities' challenges. To read more about Dr. Kim's project, locate the paper referenced in the list of references.

References

ACM (2020). ACM Code of Ethics and Professional conduct. Retrieved December 5, 2020, from https://www.acm.org/code-of-ethics.

Digital Divide 'a Matter of Life and Death' amid COVID-19 Crisis, Secretary-General Warns Virtual Meeting, Stressing Universal Connectivity Key for Health, Development. Retrieved November 1, 2020, from www.un.org/press/en/2020/sgsm20118.doc.htm

Kiburn, Kim (2005). Challenges in HCI: Digital divide. Crossroads 12, 2 (December 2005), 2-2. DOI=10.1145/1144375.1144377 http://doi.acm.org/10.1145/1144375.1144377.

Kim, P., Buckner, E., Makany, T., & Kim, H. (2011). *A comparative analysis of a game-based mobile learning model in low-socioeconomic communities of India*. International Journal of Educational Development. doi:10.1016/j.ijedudev.2011.05.008.

Nielsen, J (2006). *Digital Divide: The 3 Stages*. Retrieved Nov 1, 2020, from http://www.nngroup.com/articles/digital-divide-the-three-stages/.

Statista. (2020). Internet usage in the United States. Retrieved December 5, 2020, from https://www.statista.com/topics/2237/internet-usage-in-the-united-states/.

This page titled 11.3: The Digital Divide is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **11.3: The Digital Divide** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

11.4: Summary

Summary

Information technology has driven change on a global scale. As documented by Castells and Friedman, technology has given us the ability to integrate with people worldwide using digital tools. These tools have allowed businesses to broaden their labor pools, markets, and even operating hours. But they have also brought many new complications for businesses, which now must understand regulations, preferences, and cultures from many different nations. This new globalization has also exacerbated the digital divide using Nielson's three stages. The 2020 global pandemic has accentuated both the problems and increased efforts in bridging the digital divide globally.

This page titled 11.4: Summary is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **11.4: Summary** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

11.5: Study Questions

Study Questions

1. What does the term globalization mean?
2. What are the three areas of globalization?
3. Which technologies have had the biggest effect on globalization?
4. What are some of the advantages brought about by globalization?
5. What are the disadvantages of globalization?
6. What does the term digital divide mean?
7. What are Jakob Nielsen's three stages of the digital divide?
8. Which country has the highest average Internet speed?
9. What are the effects of the global pandemic on the digital divide?

Exercises

1. Compare the concept of Friedman's "Globalization 3.0″ with Nielsen's empowerment stage of the digital divide.
2. Do some original research to determine some of the US company's regulations before doing business in one of the following countries: China, Mexico, Iran, and India.
3. Go to speedtest.net to determine your Internet speed. Compare your speed at home to the Internet speed at two other locations, such as your local coffee shop, school, place of employment. Write up a one-page summary that compares these locations.
4. Write a report to assess Nielson's three stages based on your today's experience.
5. Go to this website https://www.ntia.doc.gov/data/digital-nation-data-explorer#sel=internetUser&disp=map or search for "Digital Nation Data Explorer" to locate it. Report the internet usage in your state and compare it with your own experience
6. Give one example of the digital divide and describe what you would do to address it.
7. How the research conducted by Manuel Castells influences globalization.

This page titled 11.5: Study Questions is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **11.5: Study Questions** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

12: The Ethical and Legal Implications of Information System

Learning Objectives

Upon successful completion of this chapter, you will be able to:

- Describe what the term information systems ethics means;
- Explain what a code of ethics is and describe the advantages and disadvantages;
- Define the term intellectual property and explain the protections provided by copyright, patent, and trademark
- Describe what Creative Commons is and be able to identify what the different licenses mean.
- Describe the challenges that information technology brings to individual privacy.

The rapid changes in all the components of information systems in the past few decades have brought a broad array of new capabilities and powers to governments, organizations, and individuals alike. This chapter will discuss the effects that these new capabilities have had and the legal and regulatory changes that have been put in place in response, and what ethical issues organizations and IT communities need to consider in using or developing emerging solutions and services that regulations are not fully developed.

12.1: Introduction
12.2: Intellectual Property
12.3: The Digital Millennium Copyright Act
12.4: Summary
12.5: Study Questions

This page titled 12: The Ethical and Legal Implications of Information System is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

12.1: Introduction

Introduction

Information systems have had an impact far beyond the world of business. In the past four decades, technology has fundamentally altered our lives: from the way we work, how we play to how we communicate, and how we fight wars. Mobile phones track us as we shop at stores and go to work. Algorithms based on consumer data allow firms to sell us products that they think we need or want. New technologies create new situations that we have never dealt with before. They can threaten individual autonomy, violate privacy rights, and can also be morally contentious. How do we handle the new capabilities that these devices empower us with? What new laws are going to be needed to protect us from ourselves and others? This chapter will kick off with a discussion of the impact of information systems on how we behave (ethics). This will be followed by the new legal structures being put in place, focusing on intellectual property and privacy.

Information Systems Ethics

The term ethics is defined as “a set of moral principles” or “the principles of conduct governing an individual or a group.” Since the dawn of civilization, the study of ethics and its impact has fascinated humankind. But what do ethics have to do with information systems?

The introduction of new technology can have a profound effect on human behavior. New technologies give us capabilities that we did not have before, which create environments and situations that have not been specifically addressed in ethical terms. Those who master new technologies gain new power; those who cannot master them may lose power. In 1913, Henry Ford implemented the first moving assembly line to create his Model T cars. While this was a great step forward technologically (and economically), the assembly line reduced human beings' value in the production process. The development of the atomic bomb concentrated unimaginable power in the hands of one government, which then had to wrestle with the decision to use it. Today’s digital technologies have created new categories of ethical dilemmas.

For example, the ability to anonymously make perfect copies of digital music has tempted many music fans to download copyrighted music for their own use without making payment to the music’s owner. Many of those who would never have walked into a music store and stolen a CD find themselves with dozens of illegally downloaded albums.

Digital technologies have given us the ability to aggregate information from multiple sources to create profiles of people. What would have taken weeks of work in the past can now be done in seconds, allowing private organizations and governments to know more about individuals than at any time in history. This information has value but also chips away at the privacy of consumers and citizens.

Communication technologies like social media(Facebook, Twitter, Instagram, LinkedIn, internet blogs) give so many people access to so much information that it's getting harder and harder to tell what’s real and what’s fake. Its widespread use has blurred the line between professional, personal, and private. Employers now have access to information that has traditionally been considered private and personal, giving rise to new legal and ethical ramifications.

Some technologies like self-driving vehicles(drones), artificial intelligence, the digital genome, and additive manufacturing methods(GMO) are transitioning into a new phase, becoming more widely used or incorporated into consumer goods, requiring new ethical and regulatory guidelines.

Code of Ethics

One method for navigating new ethical waters is a code of ethics. A code of ethics is a document that outlines a set of acceptable behaviors for a professional or social group; generally, it is agreed to by all members of the group. The document details different actions that are considered appropriate and inappropriate.

A good example of a code of ethics is the Code of Ethics and Professional Conduct of the Association for Computing Machinery, an organization of computing professionals that includes educators, researchers, and practitioners. Here is an excerpt from the preamble:

Computing professionals' actions change the world. To act responsibly, they should reflect upon the wider impacts of their work, consistently supporting the public good. The ACM Code of Ethics and Professional Conduct ("the Code") expresses the

profession's conscience. Additionally, the Code serves as a basis for remediation when violations occur. The Code includes principles formulated as statements of responsibility based on the understanding that the public good is always the primary consideration. Each principle is supplemented by guidelines, which provide explanations to assist computing professionals in understanding and applying the principle.

Section 1 outlines fundamental ethical principles that form the basis for the remainder of the Code. Section 2 addresses additional, more specific considerations of professional responsibility. Section 3 guides individuals who have a leadership role, whether in the workplace or a volunteer professional capacity. Commitment to ethical conduct is required of every ACM member, and principles involving compliance with the Code are given in Section 4.

In the ACM's code, you will find many straightforward ethical instructions, such as the admonition to be honest and trustworthy. But because this is also an organization of professionals that focuses on computing, there are more specific admonitions that relate directly to information technology:

- No one should enter or use another's computer system, software, or data files without permission. One must always have appropriate approval before using system resources, including communication ports, file space, other system peripherals, and computer time.
- Designing or implementing systems that deliberately or inadvertently demean individuals or groups is ethically unacceptable.
- Organizational leaders are responsible for ensuring that computer systems enhance, not degrade, working life quality. When implementing a computer system, organizations must consider all workers' personal and professional development, physical safety, and human dignity. Appropriate human-computer ergonomic standards should be considered in system design and the workplace.

One of the major advantages of creating a code of ethics is clarifying the acceptable standards of behavior for a professional group. The varied backgrounds and experiences of the members of a group lead to various ideas regarding what is acceptable behavior. While to many the guidelines may seem obvious, having these items detailed provides clarity and consistency. Explicitly stating standards communicates the common guidelines to everyone in a clear manner.

Having a code of ethics can also have some drawbacks. First of all, a code of ethics does not have legal authority; in other words, breaking a code of ethics is not a crime in itself. So what happens if someone violates one of the guidelines? Many codes of ethics include a section that describes how such situations will be handled. In many cases, repeated violations of the code result in expulsion from the group.

In the case of ACM: "Adherence of professionals to a code of ethics is largely a voluntary matter. However, if a member does not follow this code by engaging in gross misconduct, membership in ACM may be terminated." Expulsion from ACM may not impact many individuals since membership in ACM is usually not a requirement for employment. However, expulsion from other organizations, such as a state bar organization or medical board, could carry a huge impact.

Another possible disadvantage of a code of ethics is that there is always a chance that important issues will arise that are not specifically addressed in the code. Technology is changing exponentially, and advances in artificial intelligence mean new ethical issues related to machines. The code of ethics might not be updated often enough to keep up with all of the changes. However, a good code of ethics is written in a broad enough fashion that it can address the ethical issues of potential technology changes. In contrast, the organization behind the code makes revisions.

Finally, a code of ethics could also be a disadvantage because it may not entirely reflect the ethics or morals of every member of the group. Organizations with a diverse membership may have internal conflicts as to what is acceptable behavior. For example, there may be a difference of opinion on the consumption of alcoholic beverages at company events. In such cases, the organization must choose the importance of addressing a specific behavior in the code.

Sidebar: Acceptable Use Policies(AUP) (20%)

Many organizations that provide technology services to a group of constituents or the public require an acceptable use policy (AUP) before those services can be accessed. Like a code of ethics, it is a set of rules applied by the organization that outlines what users may or may not do while using the organization's services. Usually, the policy requires some acknowledgment that the rules are well understood, including potential violations. An everyday example of this is the terms of service that must be agreed to before using the public Wi-Fi at Starbucks, McDonald's, or even a university. An AUP is an important document as it demonstrates

due diligence of the organization's security and protection of sensitive data, which protects the organization from legal actions. Here is an example of an acceptable use policy from Virginia Tech.

Just as with a code of ethics, these acceptable use policies specify what is allowed and what is not allowed. Again, while some of the items listed are obvious to most, others are not so obvious:

- “Borrowing” someone else’s login ID and password are prohibited.
- Using the provided access for commercial purposes, such as hosting your own business website, is not allowed.
- Sending out unsolicited emails to a large group of people is prohibited.

Also, as with codes of ethics, violations of these policies have various consequences. In most cases, such as with Wi-Fi, violating the acceptable use policy will mean that you will lose your access to the resource. While losing access to Wi-Fi at Starbucks may not have a lasting impact, a university student getting banned from the university’s Wi-Fi (or possibly all network resources) could greatly impact.

References

ACM Code of Ethics. *Preamble*. Retrieved November 10, 2020, from https://www.acm.org/code-of-ethics.

This page titled 12.1: Introduction is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **12.1: Introduction** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

12.2: Intellectual Property

Intellectual Property

One of the domains that digital technologies have deeply impacted is the domain of intellectual property. Digital technologies have driven a rise in new intellectual property claims and made it much more difficult to defend intellectual property.

Merriam-Webster Dictionary defines Intellectual property as “property (as an idea, invention, or process) that derives from the work of the mind or intellect. This could include song lyrics, a computer program, a new type of toaster, or even a sculpture.

Practically speaking, it is challenging to protect an idea. Instead, intellectual property laws are written to protect the tangible results of an idea. In other words, just coming up with a song in your head is not protected, but if you write it down, it can be protected.

Protection of intellectual property is important because it gives people an incentive to be creative. Innovators with great ideas will be more likely to pursue those ideas if they clearly understand how they will benefit. In the US Constitution, Article 8, Section 8, the authors saw fit to recognize the importance of protecting creative works:

Congress shall have the power... To promote the Progress of Science and useful Arts by securing for limited Times to Authors and Inventors the exclusive Right to their respective Writings and Discoveries.

An important point to note here is the “limited time” qualification. While protecting intellectual property is important because of its incentives, it is also necessary to limit the amount of benefit that can be received and allow the results of ideas to become part of the public domain.

Outside of the US, intellectual property protections vary. You can find out more about a specific country’s intellectual property laws by visiting the World Intellectual Property Organization.

There are many intellectual property types such as copyrights, patents, trademarks, industrial design rights, plant variety rights, and trade secrets. In the following sections, we will review three of the best-known intellectual property protection: copyright, patent, and trademark.

Copyright

Copyright is the protection given to songs, movies, books, computer software, architecture, and other creative works, usually for a limited time. An artist can, for example, sue if his painting is copied and sold on T-shirts without permission. A coder can sue if another Web developer verbatim takes her code. Any work that has an “author” can be copyrighted. It covers both published and unpublished work. Under the terms of copyright, the author of the work controls what can be done with the work, including:

- Who can make copies of the work?
- Who can create derivative works from the original work?
- Who can perform the work publicly?
- Who can display the work publicly?
- Who can distribute the work?

Often, work is not owned by an individual but is instead owned by a publisher with whom the original author has an agreement. In return for the rights to the work, the publisher will market and distribute the work and then pay the original author a portion of the proceeds.

Copyright protection lasts for the life of the original author plus seventy years. In the case of a copyrighted work owned by a publisher or another third party, the protection lasts for ninety-five years from the original creation date. For works created before 1978, the protections vary slightly. You can see the full details on copyright protections by reviewing the Copyright Basics document available at the US Copyright Office’s website. See also the sidebar “History of Copyright Law.”

Obtaining Copyright Protection

In the United States, copyright is obtained by the simple act of creating the original work. In other words, when an author writes down that song, makes that film, or designs that program, he or she automatically has the copyright. However, it is advisable to

register for a copyright with the US Copyright Office for a work that will be used commercially. A registered copyright is needed to bring legal action against someone who has used a work without permission.

First Sale Doctrine

If an artist creates a painting and sells it to a collector who then, for whatever reason, proceeds to destroy it, does the original artist have any recourse? What if the collector, instead of destroying it, begins making copies of it and sells them? Is this allowed?

The protections that copyright law extends to creators have an important limitation. The first sale doctrine is a part of copyright law that addresses this, as shown below:

The first sale doctrine, codified at 17 U.S.C. § 109, provides that an individual who knowingly purchases a copy of a copyrighted work from the copyright holder receives the right to sell, display or otherwise dispose of that particular copy, notwithstanding the interests of the copyright owner.

So, in our examples, the copyright owner has no recourse if the collector destroys her artwork. But the collector does not have the right to make copies of the artwork.

Fair Use

Another important provision within copyright law is that of fair use. Fair use is a limitation on copyright law that allows for protected works without prior authorization in specific cases. For example, if a teacher wanted to discuss a current event in her class, she could pass out copies of a copyrighted news story to her students without first getting permission. Fair use allows a student to quote a small portion of a copyrighted work in a research paper.

Unfortunately, the specific guidelines for what is considered fair use and what constitutes copyright violation are not well defined. Fair use is a well-known and respected concept and will only be challenged when copyright holders feel that their work's integrity or market value is being threatened. The following four factors are considered when determining if something constitutes fair use 9 :

- The purpose and character of the use, including whether such use is of commercial nature or is for nonprofit educational purposes;
- The nature of the copyrighted work;
- The amount and substantiality of the portion used concerning the copyrighted work as a whole;
- The effect of the use upon the potential market for, or value of, the copyrighted work.

If you are ever considering using a copyrighted work as part of something you are creating, you may be able to do so under fair use. However, it is always best to check with the copyright owner to ensure you are staying within your rights and not infringing upon theirs.

Sidebar: The History of Copyright Law

As noted above, current copyright law grants copyright protection for seventy years after the author’s death or ninety-five years from the date of creation for a work created for hire. But it was not always this way.

The first US copyright law, which only protected books, maps, and charts, protected for only 14 years with a renewable term of 14 years. Over time, copyright law was revised to grant protections to other forms of creative expressions, such as photography and motion pictures. Congress also saw fit to extend the length of the protections, as shown in the chart below. Today, copyright has become big business, with many businesses relying on copyright-protected works for their income.

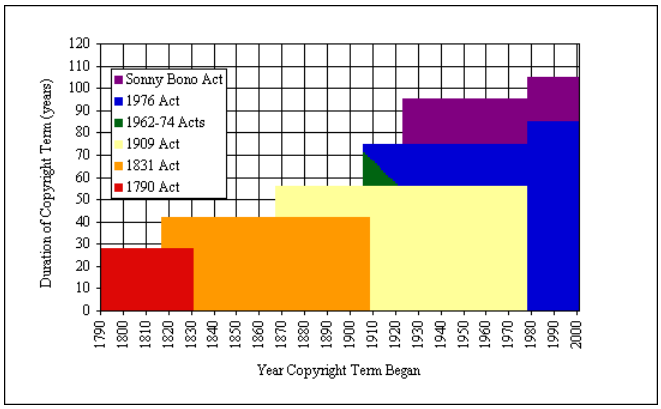


Fig 12.1 Expansion of U.S. Copyright act by Tom Bell licensed CC-BY-SA 3.0

Many now think that the protections last too long. The Sonny Bono Copyright Term Extension Act 1998 has been nicknamed the "Mickey Mouse Protection Act," as it was enacted just in time to protect the copyright on the Walt Disney Company's Mickey Mouse character. It extended copyright terms to the life of the author plus 70 years. Because of this term extension, many works from the 1920s and 1930s were still protected by copyright and could not enter the public domain until 2019 or later. Mickey Mouse will not be in the public domain until 2024.

References

ACM Code of Ethics. *Preamble*. Retrieved November 10, 2020, from https://www.acm.org/code-of-ethics.

US copyright. *Copyright basics*. Retrieved November 10, 2020, from https://www.copyright.gov/.

US copyright. *More information on fair use*. Retrieved from https://www.copyright.gov/fair-use/more-info.html.

This page titled 12.2: Intellectual Property is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **12.2: Intellectual Property** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

12.3: The Digital Millennium Copyright Act

The Digital Millennium Copyright Act

As digital technologies have changed what it means to create, copy, and distribute media, a policy vacuum has been created. In 1998, the US Congress passed the Digital Millennium Copyright Act (DMCA), which extended copyright law to consider digital technologies. An anti-piracy statute makes it illegal to duplicate digital copyrighted works and sell or freely distribute them. Two of the best-known provisions from the DMCA are the anti-circumvention provision and the "safe harbor" provision.

- The anti-circumvention provision makes it illegal to create technology to circumvent technology that has been put in place to protect a copyrighted work. This provision includes the creation of the technology and the publishing of information that describes how to do it. While this provision does allow for some exceptions, it has become quite controversial and has led to a movement to have it modified.
- The "safe harbor" provision limits online service providers' liability when someone using their services commits copyright infringement. This provision allows YouTube, for example, not to be held liable when someone posts a clip from a copyrighted movie. The provision does require the online service provider to take action when they are notified of the violation (a "takedown" notice). For an example of how takedown works, here's how YouTube handles these requests: YouTube Copyright Infringement Notification.

Many think that the DMCA goes too far and ends up limiting our freedom of speech. The Electronic Frontier Foundation (EFF) is at the forefront of this battle. For example, in discussing the anti-circumvention provision, the EFF states:

Yet, the DMCA has become a serious threat that jeopardizes fair use, impedes competition and innovation, chills free expression and scientific research, and interferes with computer intrusion laws. If you circumvent DRM [digital rights management] locks for non-infringing fair uses or create the tools to do so, you might be on the receiving end of a lawsuit.

Creative Commons

In chapter 2, we learned about open-source software. Open-source software has few or no copyright restrictions; the software creators publish their code and make their software available for others to use and distribute for free. This is great for software, but what about other forms of copyrighted works? If an artist or writer wants to make their works available, how can they go about doing so while still protecting their work integrity? Creative Commons is the solution to this problem.

Creative Commons is an international nonprofit organization that provides legal tools for artists and authors around the world. The tools offered to make it simple to license artistic or literary work for others to use or distribute consistently with the creator's intentions. Creative Commons licenses are indicated with the symbol CC . It is important to note that Creative Commons and the public domain are not the same. When something is in the public domain, it has absolutely no restrictions on its use or distribution. Works whose copyrights have expired, for example, are in the public domain.

By using a Creative Commons license, creators can control the use of their work while still making it widely accessible. By attaching a Creative Commons license to their work, a legally binding license is created. Creators can choose from the following six licenses with varying permissions from the least open to the most open license:

- **CC-BY**: This is the least restrictive license. It lets others distribute, remix, adapt, and build upon the original work, in any medium or format, even commercially, as long as they give the author credit(attribution) for the original work.
- **CC-BY-SA**: This license restricts the distribution of the work via the "share-alike" clause. This means that others can freely distribute, remix, adapt and build upon the work, but they must give credit to the original author, and they must share using the same Creative Commons license.
- **CC-BY-NC**: NC stands for "non-commercial." This license is the same as CC-BY but adds that no one can make money with this work - non-commercial purposes only.
- **CC-BY-NC-SA**: This license allows others to distribute, remix, adapt, and build upon the original work for non-commercial purposes, but they must give credit to the original author and share using the same license.
- **CC-BY-NC-ND**: This license is the same as CC-BY-NC and adds the ND restriction, which means that no derivative works may be made from the original.

- **CCO**: allows creators to give up their copyright and put their works into the worldwide public domain. It allows others to distribute, remix, adapt and build upon in any medium or format with no conditions.

This book has been written under the creative commons license CC-BY. More than half a billion licensed works exist on the Web free for students and teachers to use, build upon, and share. To learn more about Creative Commons, visit the Creative Commons website.

Patent

Another important form of intellectual property protection is the patent. A patent creates protection for someone who invents a new product or process. The definition of invention is quite broad and covers many different fields. Here are some examples of items receiving patents:

- circuit designs in semiconductors;
- prescription drug formulas;
- firearms;
- locks;
- plumbing;
- engines;
- coating processes; and
- business processes.

Once a patent is granted, it provides the inventors with protection from others infringing on their patent. A patent holder has the right to "exclude others from making, using, offering for sale, or selling the invention throughout the United States or importing the invention into the United States for a limited time in exchange for public disclosure of the invention when the patent is granted."

As with copyright, patent protection lasts for a limited period of time before the invention or process enters the public domain. In the US, a patent lasts twenty years. This is why generic drugs are available to replace brand-name drugs after twenty years.

Obtaining Patent Protection

Unlike copyright, a patent is not automatically granted when someone has an interesting idea and writes it down. In most countries, a patent application must be submitted to a government patent office. A patent will only be granted if the invention or process being submitted meets certain conditions:

- It must be original. The invention being submitted must not have been submitted before.
- It must be non-obvious. You cannot patent something that anyone could think of. For example, you could not put a pencil on a chair and try to get a patent for a pencil-holding chair.
- It must be useful. The invention being submitted must serve some purpose or have some use that would be desired.

The United States Patent and Trademark Office(USPTO) is the federal agency that grants U.S patents and registering trademarks. It reviews patent applications to ensure that the item being submitted meets these requirements. This is not an easy job: USPTO processes more than 600,000 patent applications and grants upwards of 300,000 patents each year. It took 75 years to issue the first million patents. The last million patents took only three years to issue; digital technologies drive much of this innovation.

Sidebar: What Is a Patent Troll?

The advent of digital technologies has led to a large increase in patent filings and, therefore, many patents being granted. Once a patent is granted, it is up to the patent owner to enforce it; if someone is found to be using the invention without permission, the patent holder has the right to sue to force that person to stop and collect damages.

The rise in patents has led to a new form of profiteering called patent trolling. A patent troll is a person or organization who gains the rights to a patent but does not actually make the invention that the patent protects. Instead, the patent troll searches for illegally using the invention in some way and sues them. In many cases, the infringement being alleged is questionable at best. For example, companies have been sued for using Wi-Fi or for scanning documents, technologies that have been on the market for many years.

Recently, the US government has begun taking action against patent trolls. Several pieces of legislation are working their way through Congress that will, if enacted, limit the ability of patent trolls to threaten innovation. You can learn a lot more about patent

trolls by listening to a detailed investigation titled *When Patents Attack* conducted by the radio program This American Life.

Trademark

A trademark is a word, phrase, logo, shape, or sound that identifies a source of goods or services. For example, the Nike "Swoosh," the Facebook "f," and Apple's apple (with a bite taken out of it) Kleenex(facial tissue brand) are all trademarked. The concept behind trademarks is to protect the consumer. Imagine going to the local shopping center to purchase a specific item from a specific store and finding that there are several stores all with the same name!

Two types of trademarks exist – a common-law trademark and a registered trademark. As with copyright, an organization will automatically receive a trademark if a word, phrase, or logo is being used in the normal course of business (subject to some restrictions, discussed below). A common-law trademark is designated by placing "TM" next to the trademark. A registered trademark has been examined, approved, and registered with the trademark office, such as the Patent and Trademark Office in the US. A registered trademark has the circle-R (®) placed next to the trademark.

While most any word, phrase, logo, shape, or sound can be trademarked, there are a few limitations.

A trademark will not hold up legally if it meets one or more of the following conditions:

1. The trademark is likely to confuse with a mark in a registration or prior application.
2. The trademark is merely descriptive for the goods/services. For example, trying to register the trademark "blue" for a blue product you sell will not pass muster.
3. The trademark is a geographic term.
4. The trademark is a surname. You will not be allowed to trademark "Smith's Bookstore."
5. The trademark is ornamental as applied to the goods. For example, a repeating flower pattern that is a design on a plate cannot be trademarked.

As long as an organization uses its trademark and defends it against infringement, the protection afforded by it does not expire. Thus, many organizations defend their trademark against other companies whose branding even only slightly copies their trademark. For example, Chick-fil-A has trademarked the phrase "Eat Mor Chikin" and has vigorously defended it against a small business using the slogan "Eat More Kale." Coca-Cola has trademarked its bottle's contour shape and will bring legal action against any company using a bottle design similar to theirs. As an example of trademarks that have been diluted and have now lost their protection in the US are "aspirin" (originally trademarked by Bayer), "escalator" (originally trademarked by Otis), and "yo-yo" (originally trademarked by Duncan).

Information Systems and Intellectual Property

The rise of information systems has forced us to rethink how we deal with intellectual property. From the increase in patent applications swamping the government's patent office to the new laws that must be put in place to enforce copyright protection, digital technologies have impacted our behavior.

Privacy

The term privacy has many definitions, but privacy will mean the ability to control information about oneself for our purposes. Our ability to maintain our privacy has eroded substantially in the past decades due to information systems.

Personally Identifiable Information(PII)

Information about a person that can uniquely establish that person's identity is called personally identifiable information, or PII. This is a broad category that includes information such as:

- name;
- social security number;
- date of birth;
- place of birth;
- mother's maiden name;
- biometric records (fingerprint, face, etc.);
- medical records;

- educational records;
- financial information; and
- employment information.

Organizations that collect PII are responsible for protecting it. The Department of Commerce recommends that “organizations minimize the use, collection, and retention of PII to what is strictly necessary to accomplish their business purpose and mission.” They go on to state that “the likelihood of harm caused by a breach involving PII is greatly reduced if an organization minimizes the amount of PII it uses, collects, and stores.” 4 Organizations that do not protect PII can face penalties, lawsuits, and loss of business. In the US, most states now have laws requiring organizations that have had security breaches related to PII to notify potential victims, as does the European Union.

Just because companies are required to protect your information does not mean they are restricted from sharing it. In the US, companies can share your information without your explicit consent (see sidebar below), though not all do so. The FTC urges companies that collect PII to create a privacy policy and post it on their website. California requires a privacy policy for any website that does business with a resident of the state.

While the US's privacy laws seek to balance consumer protection with promoting commerce, in the European Union, privacy is considered a fundamental right that outweighs the interests of commerce. This has led to much stricter privacy protection in the EU and makes commerce more difficult between the US and the EU.

Non-Obvious Relationship Awareness

Digital technologies have given us many new capabilities that simplify and expedite the collection of personal information. Every time we come into contact with digital technologies, information about us is being made available. From our location to our web-surfing habits, our criminal record, to our credit report, we are constantly being monitored. This information can then be aggregated to create profiles of every one of us. While much of the information collected was available in the past, collecting it and combining it took time and effort. Today, detailed information about us is available for purchase from different companies. Even information not categorized as PII can be aggregated so that an individual can be identified.

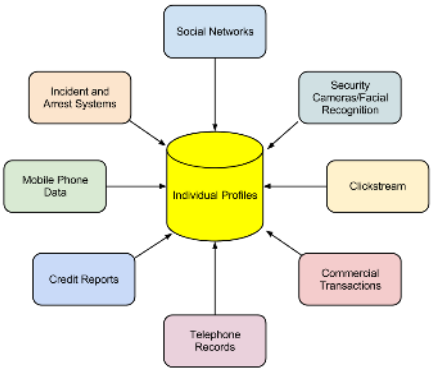


Fig 12.2: Non-obvious relationship awareness(NORA). Image by David Bourgeois, Ph.D. is licensed CC-By-NC-SA 4.0

First commercialized by big casinos looking to find cheaters, NORA is used by both government agencies and private organizations, and it is big business. In some settings, NORA can bring many benefits, such as in law enforcement. By identifying potential criminals more quickly, crimes can be solved more quickly or even prevented before they happen. But these advantages come at a price: our privacy.

Restrictions on Data Collecting

Information privacy or data protection laws provide legal guidelines for obtaining, using, and storing data about its citizens. The European Union has had the General Data Protection Regulation(GDPR) in force since 2018. The US does not have a comprehensive information privacy law but has adopted sectoral laws. 9

Children's Online Privacy Protection Act(COPPA)

Websites collecting information from children under the age of thirteen are required to comply with the Children's Online Privacy Protection Act (COPPA), which is enforced by the Federal Trade Commission (FTC). To comply with COPPA, organizations must make a good-faith effort to determine the age of those accessing their websites. If users are under thirteen years old, they must obtain parental consent before collecting any information.

Family Educational Rights and Privacy Act(FERPA)

The Family Educational Rights and Privacy Act (FERPA) is a US law that protects student education records' privacy. In brief, this law specifies that parents have a right to their child's educational information until they reach either the age of eighteen or begin attending school beyond the high school level. At that point, control of the information is given to the child. While this law is not specifically about the digital collection of information on the Internet, the educational institutions collecting student information are at a higher risk for disclosing it improperly because of digital technologies. This became especially apparent during the Covid-19 pandemic when all face-to-face classes at educational institutions transitioned to online classes. Institutions need to have policies in place that protect student privacy during video meetings and recordings.

Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA)

The Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996 (HIPAA) is the law that specifically singles out records related to health care as a special class of personally identifiable information. This law gives patients specific rights to control their medical records, requires health care providers and others who maintain this information to get specific permission to share it, and imposes penalties on the institutions that breach this trust. Since much of this information is now shared via electronic medical records, the protection of those systems becomes paramount.

If you key in the data in the US, you own the right to store and use it even if the data was collected without permission except regulated by laws and rules such as above. Very few states recognize an individual's right to privacy; California is the exception. The California Online Privacy Protection Act of 2003(OPPA) requires operators of commercial websites or online services that collect personal information on California residents through a website to post a privacy policy on the site conspicuously.

Sidebar: Do Not Track

When it comes to getting permission to share personal information, the US and the EU have different approaches. In the US, the "opt-out" model is prevalent; in this model, the default agreement is that you have agreed to share your information with the organization and explicitly tell them that you do not want your information shared. No laws prohibit sharing your data (beyond some specific categories of data, such as medical records). In the European Union, the "opt-in" model is required to be the default. In this case, you must give your explicit permission before an organization can share your information.

To combat this sharing of information, the Do Not Track initiative was created. As its creators explain 3 :

Do Not Track is a technology and policy proposal that enables users to opt-out of tracking by websites they do not visit, including analytics services, advertising networks, and social platforms. At present, few of these third parties offer a reliable tracking opt-out, and tools for blocking them are neither user-friendly nor comprehensive. Much like the popular Do Not Call registry, Do Not Track provides users with a single, simple, persistent choice to opt-out of third-party web tracking.

References:

EFF. *Unintended consequences - 16 years under DCMA (2014*). Retrieved November 10, 2020, from https://www.eff.org/wp/unintended-consequences-16-years-under-dmca

EFF. *Do not track*. Retrieved November 10, 2020, from http://donottrack.us/

Guide to Protecting the Confidentiality of Personally Identifiable Information (PII). National Institute of Standards and Technology. US Department of Commerce Special Publication 800-122. http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/nistpubs/800-122/sp800-122.pdf

US Patent and Trademark Office, *"What is a patent?"* Retrieved November 10, 2020, from www.uspto.gov/patents/

This page titled 12.3: The Digital Millennium Copyright Act is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **12.3: The Digital Millennium Copyright Act** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

12.4: Summary

Summary

The rapid changes in information technology in the past few decades have brought a broad array of new capabilities and powers to governments, organizations, and individuals alike. These new capabilities have required thoughtful analysis and the creation of new norms, regulations, and laws. This chapter has seen how intellectual property and privacy have been affected by these new capabilities and how the regulatory environment has been changed to address them.

This page titled 12.4: Summary is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **12.4: Summary** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

12.5: Study Questions

Study Questions

1. What does the term information systems ethics mean?
2. What is a code of ethics? What is one advantage and one disadvantage of a code of ethics?
3. What does the term intellectual property mean? Give an example.
4. What protections are provided by a copyright? How do you obtain one?
5. What is fair use?
6. What protections are provided by a patent? How do you obtain one?
7. What does a trademark protect? How do you obtain one?
8. What does the term personally identifiable information mean?
9. What protections are provided by HIPAA, COPPA, and FERPA?
10. How would you explain the concept of NORA?

Exercises

1. Provide one example of how information technology has created an ethical dilemma that would not have existed before the advent of information technology.
2. Find an example of a code of ethics or acceptable use policy related to information technology and highlight five points that you think are important.
3. Find an example of work done under a CC license.
4. Do some original research on the effort to combat patent trolls. Write a two-page paper that discusses this legislation.
5. Give an example of how NORA could be used to identify an individual.
6. How are intellectual property protections different across the world? Pick two countries and do some original research, then compare the patent and copyright protections offered in those countries to those in the US. Write a two- to three-page paper describing the differences.

This page titled 12.5: Study Questions is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **12.5: Study Questions** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

13: Future Trends in Information Systems

Learning Objectives

Upon successful completion of this chapter, you will be able to:

- Describe future trends in information systems.

This final chapter will present an overview or advances of some of the new or recently introduced technologies. From wearable technology, virtual reality, Internet of Things, quantum computing to artificial intelligence, this chapter will provide a look forward to what the next few years will bring to potentially transform how we learn, communicate, do business, work, and play.

13.1: Introduction

13.2: Collaborative

13.3: Internet of Things (IoT)

13.4: Future of Information Systems

13.5: Study Questions

This page titled 13: Future Trends in Information Systems is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

13.1: Introduction

Introduction

Information systems have evolved at a rapid pace ever since their introduction in the 1950s. Today, devices that we can hold in one hand are more powerful than the computers used to land a man on the moon. The Internet has made the entire world accessible to people, allowing us to communicate and collaborate like never before. In this chapter, we will examine current trends and look ahead to what is coming next.

Global

The first trend to note is the continuing expansion of globalization due to the commercialization of the internet. The use of the Internet is growing worldwide, and with it, the use of digital devices. All regions are forecasted for significant growth, with some regions higher than others, such as Asia and Latin America.

The United Nations June 2020 "Report of the Secretary-General Roadmap for Digital Cooperation" reports that 86.6% of people in the developed countries are online, while only 19% people are online in the least developed countries, with Europe being the region with the highest usage rates and Africa with the lowest usage rate.

Chapter 11 discussed that by Q3 of 2020, approximately 4.9 billion people, or more than half of the world's population, use the internet and forecast growth of 1,266% for the world total, with Asia being the highest 2136%, Latin America at 2489%. The smallest growth is still forecasted over 200% growth. For more details, please view the data at https://internetworldstats.com/stats.htm.

Social Media

Social media is one of the most popular internet activities worldwide. Statista.com reports that as of January 2020, the global usage rate for social media is 49%, and people spend about 144 minutes per day on social media. Even then, there are still billions of people that remain unconnected, according to datareportal.com. For more details, please read the entire report of Digital 2020.

As of October 2020, Statista.com also reports that Facebook remains the most popular social network globally with about 2.7B monthly active users, YouTube and WhatsApp with 2B, WeChat at 1.2B, Instagram at 1.1B, Twitter at 353M, TikTok at 689M, etc. For more details, please view this report at Statista.com.

Personalization

With the continued increased usage of the internet and e-commerce, users have moved beyond the simple, unique ringtones on mobile phones. They now expect increased personalized experience in the products or services, entertainment, and learning, such as highly targeted, just-in-time recommendations that are finely tuned with their preferences from vendors' data. For example, Netflix recommends what shows they might want to watch. Wearable devices from various vendors such as Apple, Google, Amazon make personalized recommendations for exercises, meditation, diet, among others, based on your current health conditions.

Mobile

Perhaps the most impactful trend in digital technologies in the last decade has been the advent of mobile technologies. Beginning with the simple cell phone in the 1990s and evolving into the smartphones and tablets of today, mobile growth has been overwhelming.

Smartphones were introduced in the 1990s. This new industry has exploded into a trillion-dollar industry with $484B spent on smartphones, $176B in mobile advertising, $118B in Apps, $77B in accessories, $25B in wearables (Statista, 2020.) For more details, please view The Trillion-Dollar Smartphone Economy.

Wearables

The wearable market, which is now a $25B economy, includes specific-purpose products such as fitness bands, smart socks, eyewear, hearing aids. We are now seeing a convergence in general-purpose devices such as computers and televisions and portable

devices such as smartwatches and smartphones. It is also anticipated that wearable products will touch different aspects of consumers' life. For example, smart clothing such as Neviano smart swimsuits, Live's Jacquard jacket (Lifewire, 2020),

Advances in artificial intelligence, sensors, and robotics will expand to wearables for front-line workers such as Exoskeletons such as Ekso's EVO to assist workers who have to carry heavy weight items such as firefighters, warehouse workers, or to health industries to provide mobility for people who are limited in mobility.

References

EVO is designed to provide power without pain. Retrieved December 10, 2020, from https://eksobionics.com/ekso-evo/.

Statista. *The Trillion-Dollar Smartphone Economy (2019)*. Retrieved December 11, 2020, from https://www.statista.com/chart/20258/estimated-sales-of-smartphones-and-related-products-and-services/.

Lifewire. *The 7 Best Smart Clothes of 2020*. Retrieved December 11, 2020, from https://www.lifewire.com/best-smart-clothes-4176104.

Report of the Secretary-General Roadmap for Digital Cooperation (June 2020.) Retrieved December 11, 2020, from https://www.un.org/en/content/digital-cooperation-roadmap/.

World Internet Usage and Population Statistics 2020 Year-Q3 Estimates (2020). Retrieved December 11, 2020, from https://internetworldstats.com/stats.htm.

This page titled 13.1: Introduction is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **13.1: Introduction** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

13.2: Collaborative

Collaborative

Collaborators as free content-providers

Internet usage has continued to give rise to the collaborative effort among consumers and businesses worldwide. Consumers have gained influence by sharing reviews of products and services. It is common for people to look up other people's reviews before buying a product, visiting restaurants via sites such as Yelp, instead of believing the information from vendors directly. Businesses have leveraged consumers' collaboration to contribute to the content of a product. For example, the smartphone app Waze is a community-based tool that keeps track of the route you are traveling and how fast you are making your way to your destination. In return for providing your data, you can benefit from the data being sent from all other app users. Waze will route you around traffic and accidents based upon real-time reports from other users. These businesses rely on users spending their free time to write free reviews to be shared with other people in these examples. In essence, they monetize people's time and content.

Shared economy collaborators

New types of companies such as Airbnb and Uber incorporate consumers into their business model and share a fraction of the revenues. These companies monetize everyday person's owned assets. For example, Airbnb uses its technology platform to rent out rooms, houses to people by people who actually own these assets. Uber popularized the gig economy by having people use their own cars as drivers. This trend is expected to continue and expand in other industries such as advertising.

Telecommunication

Personal communication

Video communication technologies such as Voice-over-IP (VoIP) have given consumers a means to communicate with each other for free instead of paying for expensive traditional phone lines through free services such as Microsoft Skype and WhatApp The combined use of smartphones, VoIP, more powerful servers, among others, have made landlines outdated and expensive. By 2019, the number of landlines had decreased to less than 40% from 90% in 2004 (Statista.com, 2019.)

Entertainment

The above trend continues to affect other industries, such as the consumers' exodus of cable services or pay-TV to streaming services, a phenomenon called 'cutting the cord' due to the rise of companies such as Netflix and Hulu. By 2022, it is estimated that the number of households not paying for TV services in North America will grow to around 55.1 million (Statista.com, 2019). The convergence of TV, computers, and entertainment will continue as technologies become easier to use and the infrastructure such as 5G networks, to deliver data becomes faster.

Virtual environment

Tele-work

Telecommuting has been a trend that ebbs and flows as companies experiment with technologies to allow their workers to work from home. However, with the Covid-19 pandemic, telecommuting became essential as people worldwide worked from home to comply with national or regional stay-at-home orders. The debate over the merit of telework has been set aside, and its adoption spread to many industries that have eschewed this use of technology. For example, therapy counseling, medical visits with primary care providers can now be done remotely. The Post-pandemic work environment may not necessarily be the same as it was. Now, organizations have gained valuable insights about having most, if not all, of their entire workforce work from home. In one year, Zoom, the name of a relatively unknown company providing video communications, became a household word, gaining 37% in usage rate, with Microsoft Teams trailing at 19%, Skype at 17%, Google Hangouts at 9%, and slack at 7% (Statista, 2020)

Immersion - virtual reality

Tele-work allows us to see other people while we remain in our physical world. Virtual reality (VR) gives us a perception of being physically in another world. Research in building VR has been going on since the 1990s or even earlier. One example is CAVE2, also known as the Next-Generation CAVE (NG-CAVE), a research project funded by the National Science Foundation in 1992 to

allow researchers to ‘walk around in a human brain or fly on Mars, etc.”. Please watch this video on YouTube or search for the phrase with the keyword ‘CAVE2’ for more details.

Technologies are not yet mature enough to give us a 100% immersive experience. They may be good enough for some products recently on a smaller scale in gaming or training. For example, if we use a VR goggle to play a game, we become a character. The same technology can be used in training for police officers.

Figure 13.2.1: A woman using the Manus VR glove development kit in 2016. (CC BY-SA 4.0; Manus VR via Wikipedia)

3D Printing

3D printing completely changes our current thinking of what a printer is or the notion of printing. We typically use printers to print reports, letters, or pictures on physical papers. A 3-D printer allows you to print virtually any 3-D object based on a model of that object designed on a computer. 3-D printers work by creating layer upon layer of the model using malleable materials, such as different types of glass, metals, wax, or even food ingredients

3-D printing is quite useful for prototyping the designs of products to determine their feasibility and marketability. 3-D printing has also been used to create working prosthetic legs or handguns. Icon can print a 500sqt home in 48 hours for $10,000. NASA wants to print pizzas for astronauts, and we can now print cakes too. In 2020, The US Air Force produces the first 3D-printed metal part for aircraft engines.

This technology can potentially affect the global value chain to develop products, and entrepreneurs can build prototypes in their garage or provide solutions to some social challenges. For example, producing a prototype of a 3D object for research and engineering can now be done in-house using a 3D printer which speeds up the development time. Tiny homes can be provided at a fraction of a cost of a traditional home.

With the rising need from consumers for more personalization (as discussed earlier), this technology may help businesses deliver on this need through shoes, clothing, and even 3D printed cars.

References

CAVE2 immerses scientists and engineers in their research -- literally! - Science Nation (2013). Retrieved December 10, 2020, from https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=kjAviW2alpA.

I Printed a 3D Gun (2013). Retrieved December 10, 2020, from https://mashable.com/2013/06/02/3d-printed-gun/.

NASA astronauts may soon be able to 3D-print pizzas in space (2017). Retrieved December 11, 2020, from https://www.zdnet.com/article/nasa-astronauts-may-soon-be-able-to-3d-print-pizzas-in-space/.

Printed homes (2018). Retrieved December 11, 2020, from https://www.iconbuild.com/hom.

US Air Force produces the first 3D-printed metal part for aircraft engines (2020.) Retrieved December 11, 2020, from https://www.flightglobal.com/fixed-wing/us-air-force-produces-first-3d-printed-metal-part-for-aircraft-engines/139643.article.

Statista. Cord Cutting (2019). Retrieved December 11, 2020, from https://www.statista.com/topics/4527/cord-cutting/.

Statista. Most used collaboration tools used for remote work in the United States in 2020. Retrieved December 10, 2020, from https://www.statista.com/statistics/1123023/top-collaboration-tools-for-remote-workers-in-the-us/.

This page titled 13.2: Collaborative is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **13.2: Collaborative** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

13.3: Internet of Things (IoT)

Internet of Things (IoT)

Rouse (2019) explains that IoT is implemented as a set of web-enabled physical objects or things embedded with software, hardware, sensors, processors to collect and send data as they acquire from their environments. A 'thing' could be just about anything, a machine, an object, an animal, or even people as long as each thing has an embedded unique ID and is web-enabled.

In a report by McKinsey & Company on the Internet of Things (Chui et al., 2010), six broad applications are identified:

- **Tracking behavior**. When products are embedded with sensors, companies can track these products' movements and even monitor interactions with them. Business models can be fine-tuned to take advantage of this behavioral data. Some insurance companies, for example, are offering to install location sensors in customers' cars. That allows these companies to base the price of policies on how a car is driven and where it travels.
- **Enhanced situational awareness**. Data from large numbers of sensors, for example, in infrastructure (such as roads and buildings), or to report on environmental conditions (including soil moisture, ocean currents, or weather), can give decision-makers a heightened awareness of real-time events, particularly when the sensors are used with advanced display or visualization technologies. Security personnel, for instance, can use sensor networks that combine video, audio, and vibration detectors to spot unauthorized individuals who enter restricted areas.
- **Sensor-driven decision analysis**. The Internet of Things also can support longer-range, more complex human planning and decision making. The technology requirements – tremendous storage and computing resources linked with advanced software systems that generate various graphical displays for analyzing data – rise accordingly.
- **Process optimization**. Some industries, such as chemical production, are installing legions of sensors to bring much greater granularity to monitoring. These sensors feed data to computers, which in turn analyze the data and then send signals to actuators that adjust processes – for example, by modifying ingredient mixtures, temperatures, or pressures.
- **Optimized resource consumption**. Networked sensors and automated feedback mechanisms can change usage patterns for scarce resources, such as energy and water. This can be accomplished by dynamically changing the price of these goods to increase or reduce demand.
- **Complex autonomous systems.** The most demanding use of the Internet of Things involves the rapid, real-time sensing of unpredictable conditions and instantaneous responses guided by automated systems. This kind of machine decision-making mimics human reactions, though at vastly enhanced performance levels. The automobile industry, for instance, is stepping up the development of systems that can detect imminent collisions and take evasive action.

IoT has evolved since the 1970s, and by 2020, it is now most associated with smart homes. Products such as smart thermostats, smart doors, lights, home security systems, home appliances, etc. For example, Amazon Echo, Google Home, Apple's HomePod are smart home hubs to manage all the smart IoT in the home. More and more IoT devices will continue to be offered as vendors seek to make everything 'smart.'

Autonomous

A trend that is emerging is autonomous robots and vehicles. By combining software, sensors, and location technologies, devices that can operate themselves to perform specific functions are being developed. These take the form of creations such as medical nanotechnology robots (nanobots), self-driving cars, self-driving trucks, drones, or crewless aerial vehicles (UAVs).

A nanobot is a robot whose components are on a nanometer scale, which is one-billionth of a meter. While still an emerging field, it is showing promise for applications in the medical field. For example, a set of nanobots could be introduced into the human body to combat cancer or a specific disease. In March of 2012, Google introduced the world to their driverless car by releasing a video on YouTube showing a blind man driving the car around the San Francisco area (or search for "Self-Driving Car Test: Steve Mahan). The car combines several technologies, including a laser radar system, worth about $150,000.

By 2020, 38 states have enacted some legislation allowing various activities from conducting studies, limited pilot testing, full deployment of commercial motor vehicles without a human operator; The details can be found at ghsa.org.

The Society of Automotive Engineers (SAE, 2018) has designed a zero to five rating system detailing the varying levels of automation — the higher the level, the more automated the vehicle is.

- Level Zero: No Automation – The driver does all the driving without any help from the vehicle
- Level One: Driver Assistance – The vehicle helps steer or speed up/slow down, but the driver still does the driving.
- Level Two: Partial Automation – The vehicle helps with one or more systems, but the driver still does the driving.
- Level Three: Conditional Automation – The vehicle helps with steering and brake/acceleration, but the driver still needs to monitor, can intervene as necessary still sitting in the driver seat.
- Level Four: High Automation – The vehicle completes all driving duties even if the driver does not intervene in limited conditions (i.e., local taxis)
- Level Five: Full Automation – The vehicle completes all duties without a driver on all roads in all conditions.

Consumers have begun seeing the features in levels 1 and 3 being integrated with today's non-autonomous cars, and this trend is expected to continue.

A UAV often referred to as a "drone," is a small airplane or helicopter that can fly without a pilot. Instead of a pilot, they are either run autonomously by computers in the vehicle or operated by a person using a remote control. While most drones today are used for military or civil applications, there is a growing market for personal drones. For a few hundred dollars, a consumer can purchase a drone for personal use.

Commercial use of UAV is beginning to emerge. Companies such as Amazon plan to deliver their packages to customers using drones, Walmart plans to use drones to carry things in their stores. This sector is forecasted to become a $12.6B worldwide market by 2025 (Statista.com, 2019).

References:

Autonomous Vehicles. Retrieved December 10, 2020, from https://www.ghsa.org/state-laws/issues/autonomous%20vehicles.

Chui, M. and Roberts R (2010, March 1). *The Internet of Things*. Retrieved December 10, 2020, from https://www.mckinsey.com/industries/technology-media-and-telecommunications/our-insights/the-internet-of-things.

Rouse, Margaret (2019). *Internet of things (IoT)*. IoT Agenda. Retrieved December 11, 2020, from https://internetofthingsagenda.techtarget.com/definition/Internet-of-Things-IoT.

SAE International Releases Updated Visual Chart for Its "Levels of Driving Automation" Standard for Self-Driving Vehicles (2018). Retrieved December 10, 2020, from https://www.sae.org/news/press-room/2018/12/sae-international-releases-updated-visual-chart-for-its-%E2%80%9Clevels-of-driving-automation%E2%80%9D-standard-for-self-driving-vehicles.

Statista. *Commercial Drones are Taking Off (2019)*. Retrieved December 11, 2020, from https://www.statista.com/chart/17201/commecial-drones-projected-growth/.

This page titled 13.3: Internet of Things (IoT) is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **13.3: Internet of Things (IoT)** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

13.4: Future of Information Systems

Future of Information Systems

Quantum computer

Today's computers use bits as data units. A bit value can only be either 0 or 1, as we discussed in Chapter 2. Quantum computers use qubit, which can represent a combination of both 0 and 1 simultaneously, leveraging the principles of quantum physics. This is a game-changer for computing and will disrupt all aspects of information technology. The benefits include a significant speed increase in calculations that will enable solutions for unsolvable problems today. However, there are many technical problems to be solved yet since all the IS elements will need to be re-imagined. Google announced the first real proof of a working quantum computer in 2019 (Menard, et al., 2020). Menard et al. also indicated that the industries that would benefit from this new computer type would be industries with complex problems to solve, such as pharmaceutical, autonomous vehicles, cybersecurity, or intense mathematical modeling such as Finance, Energy. For a full report, please visit McKinsey.com.

Blockchain

A blockchain is a set of blocks or a list of records linked using cryptography to record a transaction and track assets in a network. Anything of value can be considered an asset and be tracked. Examples include a house, cash, patents, a brand. Once a transaction is recorded, it cannot be changed retroactively. Hence, it is considered highly secured.

Blockchain has many applications, but bitcoin is mostly associated with it because it was the first application using blockchain technology. Sometimes bitcoin and blockchain are mistakenly meant to be the same thing, but they are not.

Bitcoin is digital money or a cryptocurrency. It is an open-source application built using blockchain technology. It is meant to eliminate the need for a central bank since people can directly send bitcoins. Simply put, bitcoin keeps track of a list of who sends how many bitcoins to another person. One difference with today's money is that a bitcoin's value fluctuates since it works like a stock. Anyone can buy different bitcoin cryptocurrencies or other cryptocurrencies on bitcoin exchanges such as Coinbase. Bitcoin and other cryptocurrencies are accepted by a few organizations such as Wikimedia, Microsoft, Wholefoods. However, bitcoin's adoption is still uncertain. If the adoption by major companies is accelerated, then banking locally and globally will change significantly.

Some early businesses have begun to use blockchain as part of their operations. Kroger uses IBM blockchain to trace food from the farms to its shelves to respond to food recalls quickly (IBM.com.) Amazon Managed Blockchain is a fully managed service that makes it easy to create and manage scalable blockchain networks.

Artificial Intelligence (AI)

Artificial intelligence (AI) comprises many technologies to duplicate the functions of the human brain. It has been in research since the 1950s and has seen an ebb and flow of interest. To understand and duplicate a human brain, AI is a complex interdisciplinary effort that involves multiple fields such as computer science, linguistics, mathematics, neuroscience, biology, philosophy, and psychology. One approach is to organize the technologies as below, and commercial solutions have been introduced:

1. **Expert systems:** also known as decision support systems, knowledge management. These solutions have been widely deployed for decades, and we have discussed in earlier chapters such as knowledge management, decision support, customer relationship management system, financial modeling.
2. **Robotics**: this trend is more recent even though it has been in research for decades. Robots can come in different shapes, such as a familiar object, an animal, or a human. It can be tiny or as big as it can be designed:
    1. A nanobot is a robot whose components are on the scale of about a nanometer.
    2. A robot with artificial skins to look like a human is called a humanoid. They are being deployed in limited situations such as assistants to police, senior citizens who need help, etc. Two popular robots are Atlas from Boston Dynamic and humanoid Sophia from Hanson Robotics.

Consumer products such as the smart vacuum iRobot Roomba are now widely available. The adoption of certain types of robots has accelerated in some industries due to the pandemic: Spot, the dog-like robot from Boston dynamics, is used to patrol for social

distancing.

Figure 13.4.1: Sophia, First Robot Citizen at the AI for Good Global Summit 2018. Image by ITU Pictures is licensed under CC BY 2.0

3. **Natural language**: voice as a form of communication with our smart devices is now the norm—for example, Apple's Siri, Amazon's Alexa.
4. **Vision**: advanced progress has been made towards camera technologies and solutions to store and manipulate visual images. Examples include advanced security systems, drones, face recognition, smart glasses, etc.
5. **Learning systems:** Learning systems allow a computer (i.e., a robot) to react to situations based on the immediate feedback it receives or the collection of feedback stored in its system. Simple forms of these learning systems can be found today in customers' online-chat support, also known as 'AI bot.' One such example is IBM's Watson Assistant.
6. **Neural networks:** This is a collection of hardware and software technologies. The hardware includes wearable devices that allow humans to control machines using thoughts such as Honda Motor's Brain-Machine Interface. This is still in the research phase, but its results can impact many industries such as healthcare.

The goal of 100% duplicating a human brain has not been achieved yet since no AI systems have passed the Alan Turing test known as Turing Test to answer the question 'Can a machine think?" Alan is widely considered a founder of the AI field and devises a test to a machine's ability to show the equivalent intelligent behavior to that humans. The test does not look for correct answers but rather answers closely resemble those a human would give.

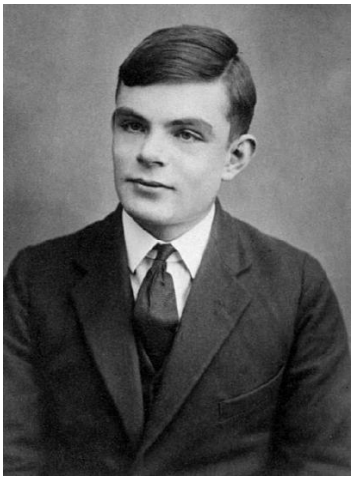


Figure 13.4.2: Alan Turing Aged 16. Image is licensed Public Domain

Even though AI has not been to duplicate a human brain yet, its advances have introduced many AI-based technologies such as AI bot, robotics in many industries. AI progress has contributed to producing many practical business information systems that we discussed throughout this book such as, voice recognition, cameras, robots, autonomous cars, etc. It has also raised concerns over how ethical is the development of some AI technologies as we discussed in previous chapters.

Advances in artificial intelligence depend on the continuous effort to collect vast amounts of data, information, and knowledge, advances in hardware, sophisticated methods to analyze both unconnected and connected large datasets to make inferences to create new knowledge, supported by secured, fast networks.

References

Boston Dynamics' dog-like robot Spot is being used on coronavirus social distancing patrol (2020). Retrieved December 13, 2020, from https://www.cnbc.com/2020/05/15/boston-dynamics-dog-like-robot-spot-used-on-social-distancing-patrol.html.

Changing your idea of what robots can do. Retrieved December 13, 2020, from https://www.bostondynamics.com/.

Honda's Brain-Machine Interface: controlling robots by thoughts alone (2009). Retrieved December 11, 2020, from https://newatlas.com/honda-asimo-brain-machine-interface-mind-control/11379/#:~:text=Honda%20Research%20Institute%2C%20Japan%2C%20has,using%20nothing%20more%20than%20thought.&text=Then%2C%20the%20doors%20will%20be,and%20act%20directly%20upon%20them.

Kroger uses IBM Blockchain technology for farm to fork food traceability. Retrieved December 11, 2020, from https://mediacenter.ibm.com/media/Kroger+uses+IBM+Blockchain+technology+for+farm+to+fork+food+traceability/0_527q9xfy.

Menard A., Ostojic I., and Patel M. (2020, February 6). *A game plan for quantum computing*. Retrieved December 10, 2020, from https://www.mckinsey.com/business-functions/mckinsey-digital/our-insights/a-game-plan-for-quantum-computing.

The smarter AI assistant for business. Retrieved December 11, 2020, from https://www.ibm.com/cloud/watson-assistant-2/

This page titled 13.4: Future of Information Systems is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **13.4: Future of Information Systems** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

13.5: Study Questions

Summary

Information systems have changed how we work, play, and learn since the internet was introduced to the mass. We may be at a tipping point now with many significant advances of technologies that have been in research for many decades and are converged roughly at the same time as described in the above trends.

The adoption of many technologies has also been accelerated due to the 2020 Covid-19 Pandemic. Organizations will need to determine how they want to move forward to leverage opportunities and manage risks should any of the above trends become a reality.

As the world of information technology moves forward, we will be constantly challenged by new capabilities and innovations that will both amaze and disgust us. As we learned in chapter 12, many times, the new capabilities and powers that come with these new technologies will test us and require a new way of thinking about the world. Businesses and individuals alike need to be aware of these coming changes and prepare for them.

Study Questions

1. Which countries are the biggest users of the Internet? Social media? Mobile?
2. Which region had the largest Internet growth (in %) as of this year?
3. Identify the top three social media networks by active users?
4. How many people worldwide still need to be connected?
5. Explain what a virtual environment is.
6. What are two different applications of wearable technologies?
7. What are two different applications of collaborative technologies?
8. What capabilities do printable technologies have?
9. What makes anything an Internet of Think?
10. What is a UAV?
11. What is Conditional Automation?
12. What is a nanobot?
13. What is a humanoid?
14. Explain what Artificial intelligence is.

Exercises

1. If you were going to start a new technology business, which of the emerging trends do you think would be the biggest opportunity? Do some original research to estimate the market size.
2. What could privacy concerns be raised by collaborative technologies such as Zoom?
3. Do some research about the first handgun printed using a 3-D printer and report some of the concerns raised.
4. Write up an example of how the Internet of Things might provide a business with a competitive advantage.
5. How do you think wearable technologies could improve overall healthcare?
6. What potential problems do you see with a rise in the number of driverless cars? Do some independent research and write a two-page paper that describes where driverless cars are legal and what problems may occur.
7. Seek out the latest presentation by Mary Meeker on “Internet Trends” (if you cannot find it, the video from 2019 is available https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=G_dwZB5h56E at the time of this writing). Write a one-page paper describing what the top

three trends are, in your opinion.

8. Visit ghsa.org to find what level of support your state has given to autonomous vehicles. Write a summary of the different levels of support for all states.

This page titled 13.5: Study Questions is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)) .

- **13.5: Study Questions** by Ly-Huong T. Pham, Tejal Desai-Naik, Laurie Hammond, & Wael Abdeljabbar is licensed CC BY 3.0.

Index

A

access control
- 6.3: Tools for Information Security

Agile development methodology
- 10.2: Systems Development Life Cycle (SDLC) Model

AI engineers
- 9.5: Emerging Roles

Application software
- 3.2: Types of Software

ARPANET
- 5.2: A Brief History of the Internet

artificial intelligence
- 7.5: Investing in IT for Competitive Advantage
- 13.4: Future of Information Systems

authentication
- 6.3: Tools for Information Security

Autonomous
- 13.3: Internet of Things (IoT)

availability
- 6.2: The Information Security Triad- Confidentiality, Integrity, Availability (CIA)
- 6.6: Security vs. Availability

B

backup
- 6.3: Tools for Information Security

Bargaining power of customers
- 7.3: Competitive Advantage

Bargaining power of suppliers
- 7.3: Competitive Advantage

Benefits of Data Warehousing
- 4.7: Data Warehouse

Big Data
- 4.6: Big Data
- 9.5: Emerging Roles

Big Data Engineer
- 9.5: Emerging Roles

binary
- 2.1: Introduction

Bits
- 2.1: Introduction

blockchain
- 13.4: Future of Information Systems

Bluetooth
- 2.4: Removable Media

Building Information Systems
- 9.2: The Creators of Information Systems

business analytics
- 4.12: Sidebar- What is data science?

business intelligence
- 4.12: Sidebar- What is data science?

business process
- 8.2: What Is a Business Process?

Business Process Engineering
- 8.2: What Is a Business Process?

business process management
- 7.4: Using Information Systems for Competitive Advantage

BYOD
- 5.12: The Changing Network Environment Network Trends

C

Cable
- 5.9: Internet Connections

Chief Information Officer
- 9.4: Managing Information Systems

Client And Servers
- 5.5: Providing Resources in a Network

Client server
- 1: What Is an Information System?
- 1.3: The Role of Information Systems

cloud computing
- 3: Software
- 3.3: Cloud Computing
- 5.12: The Changing Network Environment Network Trends

cloud services
- 7.4: Using Information Systems for Competitive Advantage

Cloud System Engineer
- 9.5: Emerging Roles

Code of Ethics
- 12.1: Introduction

Collaborative systems
- 7.4: Using Information Systems for Competitive Advantage
- 13.2: Collaborative

communication
- 5.4: How has the Human Network Influenced you?

competitive advantage
- 1.4: Can Information Systems Bring Competitive Advantage?
- 7: Leveraging Information Technology (IT) for Competitive Advantage
- 7.3: Competitive Advantage
- 7.5: Investing in IT for Competitive Advantage

Components of an information system
- 1.1: Introduction

Components of Information Systems
- 1: What Is an Information System?
- 1.2: Identifying the Components of Information Systems

Computer Engineer
- 9.2: The Creators of Information Systems

Computer Operator
- 9.3: Information-Systems Operations and Administration

Computer Programmer
- 9.2: The Creators of Information Systems

Computer Vision Engineer
- 9.5: Emerging Roles

confidentiality
- 6.2: The Information Security Triad- Confidentiality, Integrity, Availability (CIA)

Connection To The Internet
- 5.9: Internet Connections

connections
- 5.8: The Internet, Intranets, and Extranets

Converging Network
- 5.10: The Network as a Platform Converged Networks

COPPA
- 12.3: The Digital Millennium Copyright Act

Copyright
- 12.2: Intellectual Property

Cost advantage
- 7.3: Competitive Advantage

CPU
- 2.2: Tour of a Digital Device

Creative Commons
- 12.3: The Digital Millennium Copyright Act

Cyber Security
- 7.5: Investing in IT for Competitive Advantage

Cyber Security Analyst
- 9.5: Emerging Roles

cybercrime
- 6.5: Fighters in the War Against Cybercrime- The Modern Security Operations Center

D

data
- 1.2: Identifying the Components of Information Systems

Data Analytics
- 4.12: Sidebar- What is data science?

Data Center
- 5.12: The Changing Network Environment Network Trends

data governance
- 4.10: Enterprise Databases

Data Mining
- 4.8: Data Mining

data science
- 4.12: Sidebar- What is data science?

data types
- 4.4: Designing a Database

data warehouse
- 4.7: Data Warehouse
- 4.8: Data Mining

Database Administrator
- 9.3: Information-Systems Operations and Administration

Database Vs. Spreadsheet
- 4.5: Sidebar- The Difference between a Database and a Spreadsheet

databases
- 4.2: Examples of Data

DBMS
- 4.9: Database Management Systems

decision support systems
- 7.4: Using Information Systems for Competitive Advantage

Designing A Database
- 4.4: Designing a Database

developers
- 9.1: Introduction

Developing Information Systems
9: The People in Information System
9.2: The Creators of Information Systems
Device Security
6.1: Introduction
devices
5.12: The Changing Network Environment Network Trends
Differentiation advantage
7.3: Competitive Advantage
Diffusion of Innovation
9.7: Information-Systems Users – Types of Users
Digital Cooperation
13.1: Introduction
Digital Devices
2.1: Introduction
Digital Divide
11.1: Introduction
Digital Millennium Copyright Act
12.3: The Digital Millennium Copyright Act
Direct Cutover
10.4: Implementation Methodologies
Documenting a Business Process
8.2: What Is a Business Process?
drones
13.3: Internet of Things (IoT)
DSL
5.9: Internet Connections

E

early adopters
9.7: Information-Systems Users – Types of Users
Early Majority
9.7: Information-Systems Users – Types of Users
Electronic Data Interchange
7.4: Using Information Systems for Competitive Advantage
Electronic Waste
2.5: Other Computing Devices
encryption
6.3: Tools for Information Security
End User Devices
5.12: The Changing Network Environment Network Trends
Enterprise Databases
4.10: Enterprise Databases
Enterprise Software
3.2: Types of Software
ERP
3: Software
3.2: Types of Software
ERP management
9.4: Managing Information Systems
Expert systems
13.4: Future of Information Systems
Extranet
5.8: The Internet, Intranets, and Extranets

F

fair use
12.2: Intellectual Property
Fault Tolerance
5.11: Reliable Network
FERPA
12.3: The Digital Millennium Copyright Act
firewall
6.3: Tools for Information Security
Firm infrastructure
7.3: Competitive Advantage
First Sale Doctrine
12.2: Intellectual Property
Five Forces model
7.3: Competitive Advantage
Five levels of automation
13.3: Internet of Things (IoT)
Four Levels of Information Systems
7.4: Using Information Systems for Competitive Advantage
Functional Manager
9.4: Managing Information Systems

G

Global Competition
7.5: Investing in IT for Competitive Advantage
Global Firm
11.2: The Global Firm
globalization
11.1: Introduction
Globalization Benefits
11.2: The Global Firm
Globalization Challenges
11.2: The Global Firm
GPU
2.2: Tour of a Digital Device
Grade Hopper
1.3: The Role of Information Systems
Graphics Processing Unit
2.2: Tour of a Digital Device

H

Hacktivists
6.2: The Information Security Triad- Confidentiality, Integrity, Availability (CIA)
hardware
1: What Is an Information System?
1.2: Identifying the Components of Information Systems
2: Hardware
5.5: Providing Resources in a Network
HDD
2.3: Sidebar- Moore's Law
Health Information Technician
9.5: Emerging Roles
HIPAA
12.3: The Digital Millennium Copyright Act
History of information systems
1: What Is an Information System?
How do information systems work?
1.1: Introduction

I

IDE
10.3: Software Development
identity theft
6.4: Threat Impact
Inbound logistics
7.3: Competitive Advantage
information security
6: Information Systems Security
Information Security Officer
9.4: Managing Information Systems
Information Security Triad
6.2: The Information Security Triad- Confidentiality, Integrity, Availability (CIA)
Information Systems
About the Book
1.1: Introduction
7.4: Using Information Systems for Competitive Advantage
Information systems ethics
12.1: Introduction
Information Systems for Business
Preface
Information Systems Functions
9.6: Career Path in Information Systems
Innovators
9.7: Information-Systems Users – Types of Users
Input Devices
2.4: Removable Media
Integrated development environment
10.3: Software Development
integrity
6.2: The Information Security Triad- Confidentiality, Integrity, Availability (CIA)
intellectual property
12.2: Intellectual Property
Interconnectivity
5.8: The Internet, Intranets, and Extranets
internet
5.2: A Brief History of the Internet
5.6: LANs, WANs, and the Internet
5.8: The Internet, Intranets, and Extranets
Internet Connections
5.9: Internet Connections
Internet growth
13.1: Introduction
Internet of Things
13.3: Internet of Things (IoT)
Internet Speed
11.2: The Global Firm
Intranet
5.8: The Internet, Intranets, and Extranets
Intrusion Detection System
6.3: Tools for Information Security
Investing in IT
7.5: Investing in IT for Competitive Advantage
IoT
2.5: Other Computing Devices
13.3: Internet of Things (IoT)
ISO 9000
8.2: What Is a Business Process?

ISO certification
8.2: What Is a Business Process?
IT
7.2: The Productivity Paradox
IT does not matter
1.4: Can Information Systems Bring Competitive Advantage?
IT doesn't matter
7.2: The Productivity Paradox

J
JAD
10.2: Systems Development Life Cycle (SDLC) Model

K
Killer App
3.2: Types of Software
Knowledge Management
4.11: Knowledge Management

L
laggards
9.7: Information-Systems Users – Types of Users
LAN
5.6: LANs, WANs, and the Internet
5.7: Network Representations
late majority
9.7: Information-Systems Users – Types of Users
Laurie Hammond
About the Book
Learning Systems
13.4: Future of Information Systems

M
Machine Learning Engineeers
9.5: Emerging Roles
Mainframe
1.3: The Role of Information Systems
Mainframe era
1: What Is an Information System?
management information systems
7.4: Using Information Systems for Competitive Advantage
marketing
7.3: Competitive Advantage
metadata
4.10: Enterprise Databases
Mickey Mouse Protection Act
12.2: Intellectual Property
Mobile Application Developers
9.5: Emerging Roles
Mobile Software
3.2: Types of Software
Model K
1.3: The Role of Information Systems
Modern security operations center
6.5: Fighters in the War Against Cybercrime- The Modern Security Operations Center
Moore’s law
2.3: Sidebar- Moore’s Law
Moore's law
2: Hardware
Motherboard
2.3: Sidebar- Moore’s Law

N
network architecture
5.11: Reliable Network
Network Diagrams
5.7: Network Representations
Network Reliability
5.11: Reliable Network
Network Representations
5.7: Network Representations
Network Safety
5.14: Network Security
network security
5.11: Reliable Network
5.14: Network Security
Network Security Threats
5.14: Network Security
Network Symbols
5.7: Network Representations
Network Topology
5.7: Network Representations
Network Trends
5.12: The Changing Network Environment Network Trends
networking
1.2: Identifying the Components of Information Systems
Networking Communication
1: What Is an Information System?
Networking Trends In The Home
5.13: Technology Trends in the Home
networks
5.4: How has the Human Network Influenced you?
5.5: Providing Resources in a Network
5.6: LANs, WANs, and the Internet
Neural Networks
13.4: Future of Information Systems
Normalized Database
4.4: Designing a Database
NoSQL
4.5: Sidebar- The Difference between a Database and a Spreadsheet

O
ODB
4.9: Database Management Systems
OER Information System textbook
About the Book
online learning
5.4: How has the Human Network Influenced you?
Operating Systems
3.2: Types of Software
operations
7.3: Competitive Advantage
Oracle DBA
9.3: Information-Systems Operations and Administration
OS
3.2: Types of Software
Outbound logistics
7.3: Competitive Advantage
Output Devices
2.4: Removable Media
outsourcing
9.6: Career Path in Information Systems
Overview of an Information system
1: What Is an Information System?

P
Parallel Operation
10.4: Implementation Methodologies
Password Security
6.3: Tools for Information Security
patent
12.3: The Digital Millennium Copyright Act
Patent Troll
12.3: The Digital Millennium Copyright Act
PC revolution
1.3: The Role of Information Systems
Peer To Peer
5.5: Providing Resources in a Network
people and information systems
9.1: Introduction
Personal computer
1.3: The Role of Information Systems
2.5: Other Computing Devices
personally identifiable information
6.4: Threat Impact
Phased Implementation
10.4: Implementation Methodologies
PII
6.4: Threat Impact
Pilot Implementation
10.4: Implementation Methodologies
Porter’s five forces
7.3: Competitive Advantage
Porter's five forces
7: Leveraging Information Technology (IT) for Competitive Advantage
Porter's Value Chain
7: Leveraging Information Technology (IT) for Competitive Advantage
Post PC
1: What Is an Information System?
Powerline Networking
5.13: Technology Trends in the Home
PowerPoint Software
3.2: Types of Software
privacy
12.3: The Digital Millennium Copyright Act
Privacy Concerns
4.11: Knowledge Management
private cloud
3.3: Cloud Computing
Productivity Paradox
7: Leveraging Information Technology (IT) for Competitive Advantage
7.2: The Productivity Paradox

Productivity Software
3.2: Types of Software
programming languages
3.4: Software Creation
10.3: Software Development
Project Management Quality Triangle
10.3: Software Development
Project managers
9.4: Managing Information Systems

Q

QoS
5.11: Reliable Network
Qualitative Data
4.1: Introduction to Data and Databases
Quality Support Engineers
9.3: Information-Systems Operations and Administration
Quantitative Data
4.1: Introduction to Data and Databases
Quantum computer
13.4: Future of Information Systems

R

RAD
10.2: Systems Development Life Cycle (SDLC) Model
RAM
2.3: Sidebar- Moore's Law
Relational Database
4.2: Examples of Data
4.5: Sidebar- The Difference between a Database and a Spreadsheet
removal media
2: Hardware
robotics
13.4: Future of Information Systems
Role of information systems
1: What Is an Information System?
1.3: The Role of Information Systems

S

Satellite
5.9: Internet Connections
scrum
10.2: Systems Development Life Cycle (SDLC) Model
SDLC model
10.2: Systems Development Life Cycle (SDLC) Model
security
6.6: Security vs. Availability
Security Administrator
9.5: Emerging Roles
Separate Networks
5.10: The Network as a Platform Converged Networks
Shadow IT
10.3: Software Development
Smart Home Technology
5.13: Technology Trends in the Home
Smart phones growth
13.1: Introduction
smartphones
2.5: Other Computing Devices
SOC
6.5: Fighters in the War Against Cybercrime- The Modern Security Operations Center
Social Media growth
13.1: Introduction
software
1: What Is an Information System?
3: Software
5.5: Providing Resources in a Network
Software component of Information Systems
1.2: Identifying the Components of Information Systems
Software Developer
9.2: The Creators of Information Systems
software development
10.3: Software Development
Software Licenses
3.4: Software Creation
SQL
4.3: Structured Query Language
SSD
2.3: Sidebar- Moore's Law
Starbucks value chain model
7.3: Competitive Advantage
Strategy and internet
7.3: Competitive Advantage
Structured Decision
7: Leveraging Information Technology (IT) for Competitive Advantage
supply chain management
3.2: Types of Software
Support Analyst
9.1: Introduction
9.3: Information-Systems Operations and Administration
System Security
6.1: Introduction
Systems Analyst
9.2: The Creators of Information Systems
systems development life cycle
10.2: Systems Development Life Cycle (SDLC) Model

T

Tablet
2.5: Other Computing Devices
Technical Certifications
9.6: Career Path in Information Systems
technology
1: What Is an Information System?
technology development
7.3: Competitive Advantage
Telecommunication
13.2: Collaborative
Telework
13.2: Collaborative
The Digital Divide
11.3: The Digital Divide
Threat of new entrants
7.3: Competitive Advantage
Threat of substitutes
7.3: Competitive Advantage
Threat Vectors
5.14: Network Security
trademark
12.3: The Digital Millennium Copyright Act
Trainer
9.3: Information-Systems Operations and Administration
Transaction Processing System
7.4: Using Information Systems for Competitive Advantage
Types of Users
9.7: Information-Systems Users – Types of Users
Types of users of information systems
9: The People in Information System

U

UAV
13.3: Internet of Things (IoT)
Unstructured Decision
7: Leveraging Information Technology (IT) for Competitive Advantage

V

Value Chain
7.3: Competitive Advantage
Video Communications
5.12: The Changing Network Environment Network Trends
Video streaming
13.2: Collaborative
Virtual environment
13.2: Collaborative
virtualization
3.3: Cloud Computing
Vision Systems
13.4: Future of Information Systems

W

Wael Abdeljabbar
About the Book
WAN
5.6: LANs, WANs, and the Internet
5.7: Network Representations
Waterfall
10.2: Systems Development Life Cycle (SDLC) Model
Wearables
13.1: Introduction
web 1.0
1.3: The Role of Information Systems
web 2.0
1: What Is an Information System?
1.3: The Role of Information Systems
Wireless Broadband
5.13: Technology Trends in the Home

WISP

5.13: Technology Trends in the Home

World Wide Web

1.3: The Role of Information Systems
5.2: A Brief History of the Internet

Write computer programs

3: Software

Glossary

Sample Word 1 | Sample Definition 1

Detailed Licensing

Overview

Title: Information Systems for Business 1e (Pham, Desai-Naik, Hammond, and Abdeljabbar)

Webpages: 128

All licenses found:

- CC BY 4.0: 99.2% (127 pages)
- Undeclared: 0.8% (1 page)

By Page

- Information Systems for Business 1e (Pham, Desai-Naik, Hammond, and Abdeljabbar) - *CC BY 4.0*
  - Front Matter - *CC BY 4.0*
    - TitlePage - *CC BY 4.0*
    - InfoPage - *CC BY 4.0*
    - Table of Contents - *Undeclared*
    - ASCCC OERI - *CC BY 4.0*
    - Licensing - *CC BY 4.0*
    - About the Book - *CC BY 4.0*
    - Preface - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 1: What is an Information System? - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 1: What Is an Information System? - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 1.1: Introduction - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 1.2: Identifying the Components of Information Systems - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 1.3: The Role of Information Systems - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 1.4: Can Information Systems Bring Competitive Advantage? - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 1.5: Summary - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 1.6: Study Questions - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2: Hardware - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 2.1: Introduction - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 2.2: Tour of a Digital Device - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 2.3: Sidebar- Moore's Law - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 2.4: Removable Media - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 2.5: Other Computing Devices - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 2.6: Summary - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 2.7: Study Questions - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 3: Software - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 3.1: Introduction to Software - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 3.2: Types of Software - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 3.3: Cloud Computing - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 3.4: Software Creation - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 3.5: Summary - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 3.6: Study Questions - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 4: Data and Databases - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 4.1: Introduction to Data and Databases - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 4.2: Examples of Data - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 4.3: Structured Query Language - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 4.4: Designing a Database - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 4.5: Sidebar- The Difference between a Database and a Spreadsheet - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 4.6: Big Data - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 4.7: Data Warehouse - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 4.8: Data Mining - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 4.9: Database Management Systems - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 4.10: Enterprise Databases - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 4.11: Knowledge Management - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 4.12: Sidebar- What is data science? - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 4.13: Summary - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 4.14: Study Questions - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 5: Networking and Communication - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 5.1: Introduction to Networking and Communication - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 5.2: A Brief History of the Internet - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 5.3: Networking Today - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 5.4: How has the Human Network Influenced you? - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 5.5: Providing Resources in a Network - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 5.6: LANs, WANs, and the Internet - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 5.7: Network Representations - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 5.8: The Internet, Intranets, and Extranets - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 5.9: Internet Connections - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 5.10: The Network as a Platform Converged Networks - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 5.11: Reliable Network - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 5.12: The Changing Network Environment Network Trends - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 5.13: Technology Trends in the Home - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 5.14: Network Security - *CC BY 4.0*

- 5.15: Summary - *CC BY 4.0*
- 5.16: Study Questions - *CC BY 4.0*
- 6: Information Systems Security - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 6.1: Introduction - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 6.2: The Information Security Triad- Confidentiality, Integrity, Availability (CIA) - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 6.3: Tools for Information Security - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 6.4: Threat Impact - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 6.5: Fighters in the War Against Cybercrime- The Modern Security Operations Center - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 6.6: Security vs. Availability - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 6.7: Summary - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 6.8: Study Questions - *CC BY 4.0*
- 2: Information Systems for Strategic Advantage - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 7: Leveraging Information Technology (IT) for Competitive Advantage - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 7.1: Introduction - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 7.2: The Productivity Paradox - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 7.3: Competitive Advantage - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 7.4: Using Information Systems for Competitive Advantage - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 7.5: Investing in IT for Competitive Advantage - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 7.6: Summary - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 7.7: Study Questions - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 8: Business Processes - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 8.1: Introduction - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 8.2: What Is a Business Process? - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 8.3: Summary - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 8.4: Study Questions - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 9: The People in Information System - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 9.1: Introduction - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 9.2: The Creators of Information Systems - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 9.3: Information-Systems Operations and Administration - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 9.4: Managing Information Systems - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 9.5: Emerging Roles - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 9.6: Career Path in Information Systems - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 9.7: Information-Systems Users – Types of Users - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 9.8: Summary - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 9.9: Study Questions - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 10: Information Systems Development - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 10.1: Introduction - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 10.2: Systems Development Life Cycle (SDLC) Model - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 10.3: Software Development - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 10.4: Implementation Methodologies - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 10.5: Summary - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 10.6: Study Questions - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 10.7: Summary - *CC BY 4.0*
- 3: Information Systems Beyond the Organization - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 11: Information Systems Beyond the Organization - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 11.1: Introduction - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 11.2: The Global Firm - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 11.3: The Digital Divide - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 11.4: Summary - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 11.5: Study Questions - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 12: The Ethical and Legal Implications of Information System - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 12.1: Introduction - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 12.2: Intellectual Property - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 12.3: The Digital Millennium Copyright Act - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 12.4: Summary - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 12.5: Study Questions - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 13: Future Trends in Information Systems - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 13.1: Introduction - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 13.2: Collaborative - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 13.3: Internet of Things (IoT) - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 13.4: Future of Information Systems - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 13.5: Study Questions - *CC BY 4.0*
- Back Matter - *CC BY 4.0*
  - Index - *CC BY 4.0*
  - Glossary - *CC BY 4.0*
  - Detailed Licensing - *CC BY 4.0*